



GermanPod101.com

1 2 3 4 5 6 7

ULTIMATE GETTING STARTED WITH

GERMAN

GermanPod101.com



innovativeLANGUAGE.COM

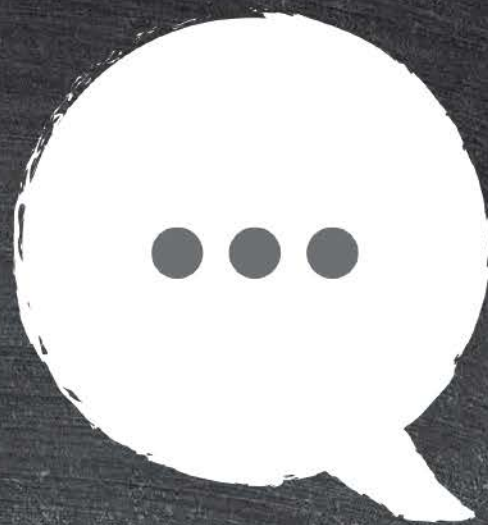
BONUS
+ 3-MINUTE
GERMAN
SERIES

innovativeLANGUAGE.COM

If you love the **German** language,
then you'll love this!

Get our Complete **German** Learning Program
at **GermanPod101.com**.

- Speak **German** From Your First Lesson
- Access hundreds of Audio & Video Courses
by Real Teachers
- Get **FREE** New Lessons Every Week
- Learn Anywhere, Anytime on Any Android
Device or Computer



Go to
GermanPod101.com
and sign up for your

FREE

Lifetime Account!



LESSON NOTES

Basic Bootcamp #1

Self Introduction/Basic Greetings in German

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 2 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

1

GERMAN

1. A: Hallo. Ich heiÙe Paul. Freut mich, Sie kennenzulernen.
2. B: Hallo. Ich heiÙe Maria. Freut mich, Sie kennenzulernen.

ENGLISH

1. A: Hello. My name is Paul. Nice to meet you.
2. B: Hello. My name is Maria. Nice to meet you.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
hallo	hello, hello (on the phone)	interjection, greeting
Mein Name ist...	My name is...	phrase
Freut mich Sie kennenzulernen.	Nice to meet you.	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Hallo, kann ich mit Anna sprechen? Hello, can I speak to Anna?	Hallo! Wie geht es Dir? Hello! How are you?
Mein Name ist Lisa. My name is Lisa.	

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is to Teach You Some German Essentials to Get You Speaking Right from Your First Lesson.

Today's phrases are what we use to introduce ourselves:

A: Hallo. Ich heiße Paul. Freut mich, Sie kennenzulernen.

A: Hello. My name is Paul. Nice to meet you.

B: Hallo. Ich heiße Maria. Freut mich, Sie kennenzulernen.

B: Hello. My name is Maria. Nice to meet you.

Vocabulary and Lesson Notes

hallo

This word is the German equivalent of "hello."

ich

The word *ich* means "I." Both males and females can use this pronoun.

heiße

This is the inflected verb of the sentence (first person singular, present tense) and refers to the verb *heißen*, which in English means "to be called." We always follow this with the name, either first name or full name, with one exception: in the case of just using the last name, we insert *Herr* ("Mr.") or *Frau* ("Ms.") right between the verb and the name.

For Example:

1. *Ich heiße Herr Schmidt. Ich heiße Frau Meier.*
"My name is Mr. Schmidt. My name is Ms. Meier."

In the dialogue, we have the following construction:

Personal Pronoun	Inflected Verb	First Name
<i>Ich</i>	<i>heiße</i>	<i>Paul</i>
<i>Ich</i>	<i>heiße</i>	<i>Maria</i>

***Freut mich, Sie kennenzulernen.* ("Nice to meet you.")**

This phrase means "Nice to meet you." We use it when meeting someone for the first time. The phrase consists of *freut mich*, which in English means "nice to" or "pleased to." *Freut* is the inflected verb form, third singular person, present tense of the word *freuen* which means ("to be pleased"), while *mich*, an inflected possessive pronoun, can be translated as "me." Then we have *Sie* (with capital letter "-S"), which in English is "you," in the formal level of speech, and finally *kennenzulernen*, the present participle of the verb *kennenlernen* ("to meet").

Literally translated, *Freut mich, Sie kennenzulernen* is "It pleases me you to meet." We can translate it as "Nice to meet you" or "Pleased to meet you."

While *Freut mich, Sie kennenzulernen* is rather formal, the informal way of expressing "Nice to meet you" in German is *Freut mich, dich kennenzulernen*. Instead of *Sie* ("you" - formal), we use *dich* ("you" - informal).

Names in German

In German, full names are given with the first name before the last name. In formal situations, it is very common for people to introduce themselves using their full name or only their last name. When addressing other people you are not familiar with or who are higher than you in status, it is important to address them with their last name in connection with *Herr* ("Mr.") or *Frau* ("Ms.").

CULTURAL INSIGHT

House-Warming

Did you just move to Germany? Then a traditional house-warming party might be the right way to get to meet new people like your neighbours and to have fun with friends! You can also expect some nice presents from whoever you decide to invite and such an event provides a real low-pressure environment for networking and introducing yourself!

The traditional gifts that are given at house warming parties include bread & salt, nice wine or general things that might be useful to have!

I will leave you with a traditional German poem concerning the topic of house warming which you can often find framed in German houses, at least in rural areas!

Wir wünschen Dir viel Glück und Frieden,
in Deiner neuen Häuslichkeit.
Gesundeheit sei Dir stets beschieden,
mit Dir zieh' ein Zufriedenheit.

Dem Brauche folgend, dass zu Wänden,
die neu sind, gehört Salz und Brot,
nimm beides hin aus unseren Händen
dann bleibt der Schwelle fern die Not.

Translation:

We wish you good luck and peace,
In your new home,
Be always healthy,
May happiness move in together with you.

Following the tradition, that to walls,
That are new, bread and salt belong,
Take both from our hands
Then bad things will stay away from your door.

LESSON NOTES

Basic Bootcamp #2

Basic German: Nationality / 'to be' / Basic Sentence Structure

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

2

GERMAN

1. A: Hallo, ich heiÙe Widar. Ich bin Deutscher.
2. B: Hallo, ich heiÙe Rebecca. Ich bin Amerikanerin.

ENGLISH

1. A: Hello, I'm Widar. I'm German.
2. B: Hello, I'm Rebecca. I'm American.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
Hallo, ich heiÙe Widar. Ich bin Deutscher.	Hello, I'm Widar. I'm German.	sentence
Hallo, ich heiÙe Rebecca. Ich bin Amerikanerin.	Hello, I'm Rebecca. I'm American.	sentence

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Bootcamp Lesson Is to Teach You How to Talk about Your Ethnicity.

Hallo, ich bin Widar. Ich bin Deutscher.

"Hello, I'm Widar. I'm German."

To talk about your ethnicity, you add suffixes according to gender (male, female) to the name of a country. In many cases, you have to make some more changes (adding *-n* + suffix, or replacing the last letter of the country + suffix). Let's take a look at some examples.

Countries and Ethnicities

I. country + suffix *-er* (male)/*-erin* (female)

Examples for a Male and Female:

Gender	"Country" ("English")	Country (German)	"Ethnicity" ("English")	Ethnicity (German)
Male	"Italy"	<i>Italien</i>	"Italian"	<i>Italien-er</i>
Male	"Austria"	<i>Österreich</i>	"Austrian"	<i>Österreich-er</i>
Female	"Italy"	<i>Italien</i>	"Italian"	<i>Italien-erin</i>
Female	"Austria"	<i>Österreich</i>	"Austrian"	<i>Österreich-erin</i>

II. country + *-n* + suffix *-er* (male)/*-erin* (female)

Examples for a Male and Female:

Gender	"Country" ("English")	Country (German)	"Ethnicity" ("English")	Ethnicity (German)
Male	"America"	<i>Amerika</i>	"American"	<i>Amerika-n-er</i>
Male	"Cuba"	<i>Kuba</i>	"Cuban"	<i>Kuba-n-er</i>
Female	"America"	<i>Amerika</i>	"American"	<i>Amerika-n-erin</i>
Female	"Cuba"	<i>Kuba</i>	"Cuban"	<i>Kuba-n-erin</i>

III. country - last letter + suffix *-er* (male)/*-erin* (female)

Examples for a Male and Female:

Gender	"Country" ("English")	Country (German)	"Ethnicity" ("English")	Ethnicity (German)
Male	"Canada"	<i>Kanada</i>	"Canadian"	<i>Kanad-ier</i>

Female	"Canada"	<i>Kanada</i>	"Canadian"	<i>Kanad-ierin</i>
--------	----------	---------------	------------	--------------------

IV. country + *-land/-reich* + suffix

Examples for a Male and Female:

Gender	"Country" ("English")	Country (German)	"Ethnicity" ("English")	Ethnicity (German)
Male	"Germany"	<i>Deutschland</i>	"German"	<i>Deutsch-er</i>
Male	"France"	<i>Frankreich</i>	"Frenchman"	<i>Fran-zose</i>
Female	"Germany"	<i>Deutschland</i>	"German"	<i>Deutsche</i>
Female	"France"	<i>Frankreich</i>	"Frenchwoman"	<i>Fran-zösin</i>

Expressing Ethnicities (American and German)

To express your ethnicity, you need to use the copula verb *sein* ("to be"). The conjugation of *sein* appears in the table below.

German	English
<i>Ich bin Amerikaner.</i>	"I'm American."
<i>Ich bin Deutscher/Deutsche.</i>	"I'm German."
<i>Du bist Amerikaner.</i>	"You're American." (singular)
<i>Du bist Deutscher/Deutsche.</i>	"You're German." (singular)
<i>Er/Sie ist Amerikaner/-in.</i>	"He/She is American."
<i>Er/Sie ist Deutscher/Deutsche.</i>	"He/She is German."
<i>Wir sind Amerikaner.</i>	"We're American."

<i>Wir sind Deutsche.</i>	"We're German."
<i>Ihr seid Amerikaner.</i>	"You're American." (plural)
<i>Ihr seid Deutsche.</i>	"You're German." (plural)
<i>Sie sind Amerikaner.</i>	"They're American."
<i>Sie sind Deutsche.</i>	"They're German."

Word Order in Simple German Sentences

The above sentences demonstrate the basic word order of a German sentence: subject + verb + object. English has the same basic word order for independent clauses.

For Example:

1. *Ich heie Widar.*
Literally, "I'm – called – Widar."
"I'm Widar."/"My name is Widar."
2. *Er spricht Deutsch.*
Literally, "He – speaks – German."
"He speaks German."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Citizenship

Ever wanted to *truly* become a German? Until the year 2000 you were pretty much out of luck if you were not born of at least one German parent, but fret not! Now there are some options for someone who wants to become a naturalized citizen of Germany which were introduced to make it somewhat easier for foreigners. Chances are that if you have lived in Germany for 8 years, are pretty fluent in German and can support yourself without needing welfare, the German passport might be yours sooner than expected! Additionally, spouses of German citizens can be naturalized after only 3 years of residence and 2 years of marriage, so go out and there and find yourself a cute German guy or girl!

LESSON NOTES

Basic Bootcamp #3

Useful Phrases for Learning German

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

3

GERMAN

1. Benny: Entschuldigung. Wie sagt man das auf Deutsch?
2. Bedienung: Grillsauce.
3. Benny: Noch einmal bitte. Langsam bitte.
4. Bedienung: Grillsauce.
5. Benny: Schreiben Sie das bitte auf.

ENGLISH

1. Benny: Excuse me. How do you say this in German?
2. Waitress: Barbecue sauce.
3. Benny: Once again, please. Slowly, please.
4. Waitress: Barbecue sauce.
5. Benny: Please write it down.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
Entschuldigung. Wie sagt man das auf Deutsch?	Excuse me. How do you say this in German?	phrase
Schreiben Sie das bitte auf.	Please write it down.	phrase

Noch einmal bitte. Langsam
bitte.

Once again, please. /
Slowly, please.

phrase

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Bootcamp Lesson Is Some German Phrases that Come in Handy When Learning German.

Entschuldigung. Wie sagt man das auf Deutsch?

"Excuse me. How do you say this in German?"

Below, we'll cover several phrases that you'll find useful when first learning German.

Entschuldigung. ("Excuse me.")

Entschuldigung translates to "excuse me" in English, and you often use it when trying to get someone's attention when you are about to say something or ask a question. You can also use it to apologize.

Wie sagt man ____ auf Deutsch? ("How do you say [word] in German?")

You can use this phrase when you don't know what something is called in German. In the blank, you can put an English word or point to something and use *das* ("this") like Benny did in the dialogue.

If someone uses a German word that you are not familiar with, and you would like to ask for the English translation, you can use the same structure to ask what that something is called in English as follows: *Wie sagt man ____ auf Englisch?* ("How do you say (word) in English?")

Bitte. ("Please.")

Bitte is a phrase that means "please." You can use this phrase when you are asking for something or asking someone to do something for you.

You can pair the following two phrases with *bitte* to ask someone to repeat something:

1. *noch einmal*
"once more"
2. *langsam*
"slowly"

Schreiben Sie das bitte auf ("Please write it down.")

You can also ask someone to write down the word that you don't know or understand. In this case, you should use the simple phrase *Schreiben Sie das bitte auf* ("Please write it down.").

Note that in German, you don't write something "down," but rather you write it "up": the verb *aufschreiben* literally means "to write up," but we translate it as "to write down."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

German Grills

In most residential neighborhoods in Germany, the grill is a place for the people in the local area to meet, eat, and talk. Be it for construction workers or students who want to grab a quick lunch (it is very unusual for food to be served at most German schools!), grills serve as a fast alternative to most normal restaurants. Even though there is of course the fair share of franchises like McDonalds or Subway in German cities, those are mainly restricted to downtown areas or near major highway exits, which leaves grills as one of the major fast food opportunities in Germany. The food ranges from the typical cheeseburger and fries to German fast food specialties like the Currywurst, and the prices are usually very fair for the amount of food that is being served.

LESSON NOTES

Basic Bootcamp #4

Counting 1 – 100 in German

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

4

GERMAN

1. Paul: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20.

ENGLISH

1. Paul: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
eins	one (1)	numeral
zwei	two (2)	numeral
drei	three (3)	numeral
vier	four (4)	numeral
fünf	five (5)	numeral
sechs	six (6)	numeral
sieben	seven (7)	numeral
acht	eight (8)	numeral
neun	nine (9)	numeral
zehn	ten (10)	numeral

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Auf die Eins in Mathe kannst du stolz sein.</p> <p>You can be proud of that A in math.</p>	<p>Möchtest du ein oder zwei Brötchen?</p> <p>Do you want one or two rolls?</p>
--	--

<p>Drei Briefmarken, bitte. Three stamps, please.</p>	<p>Die Polizei konnte vier Kilo Rauschgift sicherstellen. The police were able to seize four kilos of narcotic drugs.</p>
<p>Nur noch fünf Minuten! Just five more minutes!</p>	<p>Ich habe gestern Abend sechs Biere getrunken. I drank six beers yesterday.</p>
<p>Die Woche hat sieben Tage. The week has seven days.</p>	<p>Er fiel von einer acht Meter hohen Mauer und brach sich das Bein. He fell from a wall that was eight meters high and broke his leg.</p>
<p>Ich habe neun Leute zu meiner Feier eingeladen. I invited nine people to my party.</p>	<p>Ich bin zehn Jahre alt. I am ten years old.</p>

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Bootcamp Lesson Is Learning the Numbers from One to One Hundred in German.

eins, zwei, drei, vier, fünf, sechs, sieben, acht, neun, zehn
"one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten"

Numbers from zero through ten:

Number	German
0	<i>null</i>
1	<i>eins</i>
2	<i>zwei</i>

3	<i>drei</i>
4	<i>vier</i>
5	<i>fünf</i>
6	<i>sechs</i>
7	<i>sieben</i>
8	<i>acht</i>
9	<i>neun</i>
10	<i>zehn</i>

Numbers from eleven through twenty:

Number	German
11	<i>elf</i>
12	<i>zwölf</i>
13	<i>dreizehn</i>
14	<i>vierzehn</i>
15	<i>fünfzehn</i>
16	<i>sechzehn</i>
17	<i>siebzehn</i>
18	<i>achtzehn</i>
19	<i>neunzehn</i>
20	<i>zwanzig</i>

Multiples of ten up to one hundred:

Number	German
10	<i>zehn</i>
20	<i>zwanzig</i>
30	<i>dreiig*</i>
40	<i>vierzig</i>
50	<i>fnfzig</i>
60	<i>sechzig</i>
70	<i>siebzig</i>
80	<i>achtzig</i>
90	<i>neunzig</i>
100	<i>einhundert</i>

The words marked with an asterisk are exceptions. Please note the sound changes that take place in these words.

Language Expansion

Here is the pattern for building some additional numbers from twenty-one to ninety-nine, which we discussed in the lesson:

number + "and" + multiple of 10

Number	German
21	<i>ein-und-zwanzig</i>
39	<i>neun-und-dreiig</i>
45	<i>fnf-und-vierzig</i>

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Marks and Euros: German Currency

Just a quick note on currencies. While Germany's official currency has been the euro (€) since 2002, before that it was the Deutsche Mark for almost sixty years.

The euro is now the official currency in sixteen out of twenty-seven member states of the European Union. Some 330 million Europeans use it daily, and it is the second most-traded currency in the world, second only to the U.S. dollar.

The European Union issues banknotes in €500, €200, €100, €50, €20, €10, and €5. Each banknote has its own color and is dedicated to an artistic period of European architecture. The front of the note always features windows or gateways, while the back shows bridges.

The euro is divided into one hundred cents. The coins are issued in €2, €1, €50 cent, €20 cent, €10 cent, €5 cent, €2 cent, and €1 cent denominations. All euro coins have a common side and a national side that the respective national authorities choose, which shows national emblems, portraits of famous compatriots, or other significant symbols. For example, the German €2 coin shows the federal eagle. It's one of Europe's oldest state insignias.

LESSON NOTES

Basic Bootcamp #5 Counting from One Hundred to Ten Thousand in German

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 7 Cultural Insight

5

GERMAN

1. Auktionär: And here we have a beautiful new motorcycle! Look stylish as you ride around town! We'll start the bidding at 100 euros.
2. Michael: Einhundert!
3. Paul: Zweihundert!
4. Michael: Fünfhundert!
5. Paul: Eintausend!
6. Michael: Eintausenddreihundert!
7. Paul: Eintausendsechshundert!
8. Michael: Zweitausend!
9. Paul: Dreitausend!
10. Michael: Achttausend!!!
11. Paul:
12. Auctioneer: Sold! To this person right here for eight thousand euros!
13. Michael: Wahnsinn!

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Auctioneer: And here we have a beautiful new motorcycle! Look stylish as you ride around town! We'll start the bidding at 100 euros.
2. Michael: One hundred!
3. Paul: Two hundred!
4. Michael: Five hundred!
5. Paul: One thousand!
6. Michael: One thousand three hundred!
7. Paul: One thousand six hundred!
8. Michael: Two thousand!
9. Paul: Three thousand!
10. Michael: Eight thousand!!!
11. Paul:
12. Auctioneer: Sold! To this person right here for eight thousand euros!
13. Michael: Amazing!

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
ehundred	one hundred (100)	numeral
zweihundert	two hundred (200)	numeral

dreihundert	three hundred (300)	numeral
vierhundert	four hundred (400)	numeral
fünfhundert	five hundred (500)	numeral
sechshundert	six hundred (600)	numeral
siebenhundert	seven hundred (700)	numeral
neunhundert	nine hundred (900)	numeral
achthundert	eight hundred (800)	numeral

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Wir feiern heute einhundert Jahre Demokratie.</p> <p>We are celebrating one hundred years of democracy today.</p>	<p>Zweihundert Jahre sind eine lange Zeit.</p> <p>Two hundred years is a long time.</p>
<p>Dreihundert Spartaner kämpften bis zum Tod.</p> <p>Three hundred Spartans fought to the death.</p>	<p>Eine Runde im Stadion ist vierhundert Meter lang.</p> <p>One lap in the stadium is four hundred meters long.</p>
<p>Circa fünfhundert Leute kamen bei der Explosion ums Leben.</p> <p>Around five hundred people died in the explosion.</p>	<p>Mein Dorf hat nur 600 Einwohner.</p> <p>My town has only six hundred inhabitants.</p>
<p>Diese Statue ist siebenhundert Jahre alt.</p> <p>This statue is seven hundred years old.</p>	<p>Diese Betonwand ist neunhundert Millimeter dick.</p> <p>This concrete wall is nine hundred millimeters thick.</p>

Wir haben achthundert Panzer in Reserve.

We have eight hundred tanks in reserve.

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Bootcamp Lesson is to teach numbers from 100 to 10,000 in German.

Achttausend!

"Eight thousand!"

In this lesson, we'll learn how to form the numbers from one hundred up to ten thousand.

Number	German
100	<i>ehundred</i>
1,000	<i>eintausend</i>
10,000	<i>zehntausend</i>

To create multiples of hundreds and thousands, attach the number before the word *hundert* ("hundred") and *tausend* ("thousand") as follows:

Number	German
100	<i>ehundred</i>
200	<i>zweihundert</i>
300	<i>dreihundert</i>
400	<i>vierhundert</i>
500	<i>fünfhundert</i>
600	<i>sechshundert</i>
700	<i>siebenhundert</i>
800	<i>achthundert</i>
900	<i>neunhundert</i>

1000	<i>eintausend</i>
2000	<i>zweitausend</i>
3000	<i>dreitausend</i>
4000	<i>viertausend</i>
5000	<i>fünftausend</i>
6000	<i>sechstausend</i>
7000	<i>siebentausend</i>
8000	<i>achttausend</i>
9000	<i>neuntausend</i>

Here are the numbers from ten thousand to one million in German:

Number	German
10,000	<i>zehntausend</i>
20,000	<i>zwanzigtausend</i>
30,000	<i>dreiigtausend</i>
40,000	<i>vierzigtausend</i>
50,000	<i>fnfzigtausend</i>
60,000	<i>sechzigtausend</i>
70,000	<i>siebzigttausend</i>
80,000	<i>achtzigtausend</i>
90,000	<i>neunzigtausend</i>
100,000	<i>ehunderttausend</i>

1,000,000

eine Million

More Complex Numbers

The pattern for building numbers from 100 to 999 is:

number + hundred number + multiple of ten

For Example:

Number	German
101	<i>ehnhundert-eins</i>
105	<i>ehnhundert-fünf</i>
111	<i>ehnhundert-elf</i>
723	<i>siebenhundert drei-und-zwanzig</i>

The pattern for building numbers from 1,000 to 9,999 is:

number + thousand number + hundred number + multiple of ten

For Example:

Number	German
1300	<i>eintausend-dreihundert</i>
1600	<i>eintausend-sechshundert</i>
4800	<i>viertausend-achthundert</i>
2496	<i>zwei-tausend vier-hundert sechs-und-neunzig</i> (literally, "two thousand, four hundred, six and ninety")

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Frankfurt, Financial Center of Germany

If you are looking for people that deal with big numbers on a daily basis, Frankfurt might just be the place that you should visit! Situated near the beautiful Main River, Frankfurt is the financial as well as the transportation center of Germany. Important institutions like the German stock exchange, the European central bank, and the German Federal bank are situated here as well as one of the busiest international airports.

Additionally, Frankfurt has some other great points that should make a decision for a visit even easier; for example, it is considered one of the warmest cities in Germany with an annual average temperature of 10.1 °C (50°F). Needless to say, this city has been around since the Roman era and is the place of many roman-style buildings and churches like the Saint Paul's church, which was the seat of the first democratically elected parliament in 1848.

LESSON NOTES

All About #1

Why You Should Learn German

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

1

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Top Five Reasons to Learn German

Background of the German Language

German is a West Germanic language, like English and Dutch. It derives from the Germanic branch of the Indo-European language family, although there are significant minorities of words derived from Latin and Greek. It ranks in the list of the top ten languages based on the number of native speakers, with approximately 105 million people speaking German as their native language. German is also the third most-learned language worldwide.

The German language is rich with regional dialects, with some being so radically different from the standard dialect (*Hochdeutsch*, meaning "High German") that some native speakers even have trouble understanding them. The most well known dialects are the "Bavarian dialect" (*Bayrischer Dialekt*) and the "Saxonian dialect" (*Sächsischer Dialekt*). While the Bavarian dialect is spoken in Bavaria, the southernmost state of Germany with its famous city Munich (*München*), the Saxonian dialect is spoken in the southeastern part of the country.

The German written language consists of a Latin-based alphabet, which is extended by a few specific German letters.

The German language has borrowed heavily from other European countries and languages when it comes to foreign words or loan words. The Germans have borrowed many words from France, Italy, Scandinavia, and Eastern Europe, but also from the Hebrew, Arabic, and Turkish languages. Although the number of borrowed French words is quite high, many of them have fallen out of use. These days, we can't overlook English influences. This tendency has led to extreme polarization in academic discussions: strong supporters for the integration of foreign words (especially English loan words) on one hand, and those who fight to banish them on the other. While the matter is still up in the air, the German Ministry of Education stays out of this conflict.

About Germany

Germany is known as *Deutschland*, which literally means "German country" to the Germans. With high-level education, a high-class medical system, great innovation potential, and a strong economy, this technologically advanced country in the heart of Europe is one of the world's leading nations. It's also gaining power from its position as the strongest financial contributor to the European Union.

Where Is German Spoken?

German is mainly spoken in Germany, but there are another four countries that use German as their official language: Austria, Switzerland, Luxembourg, and Liechtenstein. Furthermore, there are large communities of German speakers all over the world, including the United States of America, Canada, Russia, the Netherlands, Eastern Europe, and many other regions.

Why is it Important?

So why should you learn German? Some great reasons to learn are...

1. To communicate with German people! German is one of the top ten languages in the world based on the number of native speakers. That's over 105 million people. Just imagine all of the conversations you could have.
2. German pronunciation is easy! German is pronounced just the way it looks, so you can start speaking right away.
3. You will learn more than just a language. Learning German will give you great insight into the world of German and European culture in general that you just can't get any other way. By learning how the language works, you'll learn more about how the culture works.
4. German is fun! German has a lot to offer in the way of pop culture-fun and interesting movies, music, TV shows-you name it! Learning German will give you even greater access to the rich world of German pop culture.
5. You can make money! Germany boasts one of the largest economies in the world and is ranked third in the world after the United States and China. Proficient speakers of German can find jobs in various fields such as business, international relations, finance, electronics, engineering, information technology, tourism, translation, education, and many, many more.

LESSON NOTES

All About #2

Understanding the German Writing System

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

2

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the German Writing System

The German writing system uses one alphabet—the German alphabet. With this alphabet, the German writing system displays a scientific vocabulary of about nine million German words and word groups. The German alphabet is a Latin-based alphabet and consists of twenty-six letters: the same letters you can find in the basic Latin alphabet.

Latin was the official language of the Roman Empire (500 B.C. - 500 A.D.). The Romans developed twenty-six letters to create a broad variety of possible syllables and words. While the common people in the territory that was Germany at that time spoke an antecedent of German, the upper class continued to use Latin as their official language and so adapted the Latin alphabet.

Even today, the Latin-based alphabet is quite popular in Europe and many other countries around the world. Its impact is unparalleled. The most prominent countries that use it are England, France, Italy, Spain, the Netherlands, Switzerland, Austria, Germany, the United States, Canada, Australia, New Zealand, Mexico, South American nations in general, and many more countries around the globe.

The German alphabet has twenty-six basic letters, like the Latin alphabet. We can find them in two variants: uppercase and lowercase. German uses five basic vowels: *-A, -E, -I, -O, and -U* (uppercase) and *-a, -e, -i, -o, and -u* (lowercase). It also uses twenty-one basic consonants: *-B, -C, -D, -F, -G, -H, -J, -K, -L, -M, -N, -P, -Q, -R, -S, -T, -V, -W, -X, -Y, and -Z* (uppercase), and *-b, -c, -d, -f, -g, -h, -j, -k, -l, -m, -n, -p, -q, -r, -s, -t, -v, -w, -x, -y, and -z* (lowercase).

The German language additionally uses three letters with diacritics and one ligature. We call the diacritic letters *Umlaute* ("umlauts"), while we call the ligature *Eszett* (sharp-s).

The German language uses three diacritic letters in uppercase and lowercase: *-Ä, -Ö, and -Ü* (uppercase), and *-ä, -ö, and -ü* (lowercase). Although these letters represent distinct sounds in the German phonology, Germans usually do not consider them part of the alphabet. When asked to say the alphabet, Germans will just count the twenty-six cardinal Latin letters and will name the umlauts only when asked to do so explicitly.

-ä, -ö, and -ü originated as *-a, -o, and -u* with a superscripted *-e*, which in German handwriting was written as two vertical dashes. Those dashes have degenerated to dots. This led to their current writing as cardinal letters plus superscripted dots: *-a + " = -ä; -o + " = -ö, and -u + " = -ü.*

In case it is not possible to use the umlauts, when using a restricted character set (because

keyboards other than the German keyboard don't display the umlauts), transcribe the umlauts -Ä, -Ö, -Ü, -ä, -ö, and -ü as -Ae, -Oe, -Ue, -ae, -oe, and -ue (base vowel plus -e).

However, avoid any such transcription when possible because vowel combinations of "-a + -e," "-o + -e," or "-u + -e" don't necessarily mean that it always is a transcription of -ä, -ö, or -ü. For example, look at *das neue Haus* ("the new house"). *Neue* is spelled "-n-e-u-e," which could be back-transcribed as "-n-e-ü." Technically, the second -e has no connection with the -u at all: *neue* means *neu* ("new"), while the -e at the end indicates the neutral singular form. So *neü* doesn't exist in German.

The other extra letter of the German alphabet is the sharp -s, which we call *Eszett* and write as ß. The *Eszett* looks similar to the lowercase Greek "beta", but the curve is not closed at the bottom (ß). *Eszett* only exists in a lowercase version because it can never occur at the beginning of a word or sentence.

When using a restricted character set, we can convert *Eszett* (ß) to -ss. For example, you can convert *Fuß*, spelled -F-u-ß (meaning "foot"), to *Fuss* (-F-u-s-s). This rule also applies when you must capitalize entire words. For example, *Fußball* ("soccer") is capitalized FUSSBALL, using -SS.

The German spelling reform of 1996 led to a reduced usage of *Eszett* in Germany and Austria. Nowadays, ß replaces -ss only after long vowels and diphthongs.

There is no general agreement on where these umlauts occur in the sorting sequence. Telephone directories treat them by replacing them with the base vowel followed by an -e, whereas dictionaries sort each umlauted vowel as a separate letter after the base vowel. As an example from a telephone book, *Ärzte* ("doctors") occurs after *Adressenverlage* but before *Anlagenbauer* (because -Ae replaces -Ä). In a dictionary, *Ärzte* and all other words starting with -Ä occur after *Arzt* and all other words starting with -A. We sort the sharp -s *Eszett* (ß) as though it were -ss in both phone directories and dictionaries.

The Germans consider some of the letters of the German alphabet to be rare letters. -q, for example, is a rare letter. It only appears in the sequence -qu, as in *Quark* ("cottage cheese"). Other letters, like -x and -y, occur almost exclusively in loan words (especially of Greek heritage) and not in native German words. We use -c in combination with -h or -s-h as -ch or -sch.

Another peculiarity of the German writing system is the rule that the first letter of any German noun is always capitalized, even in the middle of the sentence.

For Example:

1. *Peter spielt Ball auf der Straße.*
"Peter plays with a ball on the street."

We capitalize the nouns *Ball* ("ball") and *Straße* ("street") even though they don't appear at the beginning of the sentence and are not considered proper nouns.

LESSON NOTES

All About #3

We Make It Easy to Learn Basic German Grammar!

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

3

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Basic German Grammar

Now, we know that the mere mention of grammar is enough to make your palms sweat and perhaps bring back some not-so-good memories of your old high school language classes. But don't worry - we're here to give you a basic overview of German grammar using language that's easy to understand - no drawn-out, long-winded explanations to be found here! Learn German grammar quickly while having fun at the same time!

Before we take a look at German grammar, though, let's quickly go over the basics of English grammar first. By understanding more about how English works, you'll be able to see how it differs from German grammar.

English Sentence Order

First, let's take a look at sentence order.

English is what we call an SVO language, which means that the sentences come in the order of subject - verb - object. This rule applies to main clauses and subordinate clauses.

Let's illustrate this with an example.

Main clause:

Subject	Verb	Object
"I"	"eat"	"ice cream"

The subject, or the one doing the action, is "I." The verb, or action, is "eat." The object, or the one receiving the action, is "ice cream." This is an example of a sentence in an SVO language.

Subordinate clause:

Conjunction	Subject	Verb	Object
"because"	"I"	"like"	"it"

Subordinate clauses start with a conjunction, followed by subject-verb-object (SVO); first the

subject, "I," followed by the verb, "like," and finally the object, "it."

German Sentence Order

German is a bit different from English in this respect. There are two common word orders: one for **main clauses** (independent clauses) and another for **subordinate clauses** (dependent clauses).

Main clauses use SVO like English. The subject is in first position of the sentence, while the verb or helping verb appears second in the sentence, and the object marks the last position. In subordinate clauses, this is somewhat different. A conjunction holds the first position, followed by the subject and the object. The verb appears at the very end.

For Example:

Let's look at the whole sentence: "I eat ice cream because I like it." The main clause is "I eat ice cream," while the dependent clause is "because I like it."

Main clause:

Subject	Verb	Object
"I"	"eat"	"ice cream"

Main clauses use SVO like English. So our previous example, "I eat ice cream" in English, stays "I eat ice cream" when put in German order.

Subordinate clause:

Conjunction	Subject	Object	Verb
"because"	"I"	"it"	"like"

The conjunction holds the first position, followed by subject, "I," and the object, "it," and the verb "like" appears in the last position.

To sum it up: German main clauses follow the SVO rule, while subordinate clauses follow the SOV rule (subject-object-verb). This is one of the biggest differences between English and German grammar and one of the most important aspects to keep in mind!

Forming Questions

First, we will take a look at how to form questions in English. To do so, you have to change

the order of the sentence!

For Example:

1. **"He is** a student"
becomes
"Is he a student?"

German uses the same method as English-changing the word order of the sentence. Let's take a look at the German equivalent of the sentence above:

1. ***Er ist Student.*** ("He is a student.")
becomes
Ist er ein Student? ("Is he a student?")

Let's look at one more.

For Example:

1. ***Du wohnst in Berlin.*** ("You live in Berlin.")
becomes
Wohnst du in Berlin? ("Do you live in Berlin?")

The position of a verb in a sentence changes according to the type of sentence. Affirmative sentences require a verb or helping verb to appear second in the sentence. In polar questions (*Ist er ein Student?* meaning "Is he a student?"), exclamations (*Halt bitte an!* meaning "Stop, please!"), and wishes, verbs always appear in the first position, and in subordinate clauses, verbs occur at the very end.

Tense

Tense is a method that we use in English to refer to time-past, present, and future. If you are a native English speaker, you might not even be aware of how many tenses there are in English. Let's think about the future tense for a moment. The sentence "I jog" in the present tense becomes "I will jog" or even "I'm going to jog." (And they have slightly different meanings! Did you ever notice?)

Compared to the twelve basic English tenses, German has only a few. While the German language has six tenses, Germans mainly use only four. These six tenses are **present**, **future**, **future perfect**, **preterit**, **perfect**, and **past perfect**.

The present tense describes what is happening at this definite moment. The future tense describes what's going to happen, and the future perfect describes what will have happened in the future. The other three tenses describe the past. The preterit tense expresses actions that took place in the past. The German language uses the perfect tense to describe completed (thus "perfect") actions in the past, and the past perfect refers to events that had been completed before another past action.

The two tenses the German language rarely uses are the future perfect and the past perfect.

Non-composed Tenses

The present and preterit tenses are non-composed tenses. In these tenses, we conjugate the verb without any helping verb forms.

For Example:

1. **Present**

Ich gehe zum Supermarkt.

"I go to the supermarket."

Gehe is the conjugated verb, and it means "go."

2. **Preterite**

Ich ging zum Supermarkt.

"I went to the supermarket."

Ging is the conjugated verb, and it means "went."

Composed Tenses

The perfect, past perfect, future, and future perfect tenses are composed tenses. They are composed of a helping verb (usually an inflected form of *sein/haben*, meaning "to be"/"to have") and the infinite verb or participle at the end of the sentence.

For Example:

Perfect

1. *Ich bin zum Supermarkt gegangen.*

"I was going to the supermarket."

The perfect tense is a composed tense. Here, the verb is composed of the helping verb *bin* (first singular person of "to be") and the verb participle *gegangen* ("to go") at the end of the sentence.

Future

1. *Ich werde zum Supermarkt gehen.*
"I will go to the supermarket."

The future tense is composed of the helping verb *werde* ("will") and the infinite verb *gehen* ("to go") at the end of the sentence.

One more note on the future tense: Germans tend to avoid using the future tense because it can be unspecific. Instead of saying *Ich werde zum Supermarkt gehen* ("I will go to the supermarket."), they might say *Ich gehe morgen zum Supermarkt* ("Tomorrow, I go to the supermarket."). It's more common to use the present tense and add words that indicate the future, like *morgen* ("tomorrow") or *nächste Woche* ("next week") than to use the future tense.

Conjugation

In a lot of languages, the verb conjugates, or changes its form, according to **who** is doing the action. This is especially true for Romance languages, but we also see it in English: for example, "I go" versus "he goes."

German verbs also conjugate according to the subject. The pronouns *ich*, *du*, *er/sie/es*, *wir*, *ihr*, and *sie* symbolize the three persons (singular and plural). The subject, if specified, can easily be something other than these pronouns, but we use them for our examples.

German distinguishes between regular and irregular verb conjugation. The verb *gehen* is an example for regular conjugation. There are a lot of different verb classes though. We classify the regular verbs, sometimes called "weak verbs," by their endings. There are three groups of regular verbs: regular *-en* verbs (such as *lieben*, meaning "to love"); regular *-n* verbs (such as *handeln*, meaning "to act") and regular *-ten* verbs (such as *arbeiten*, meaning "to work").

Conjugation Mode for Regular Verbs (present tense, indicative)

Regular *-en* Verbs

Infinitive *lieben* ("to love")

Singular

German	"English"
<i>ich liebe</i>	"I love"
<i>du liebst</i>	"you love"

er/sie/es liebt

"he/she/it loves"

Plural

German

"English"

wir lieben

"we love"

ihr liebt

"you love"

sie lieben

"they love"

Regular -n Verbs

Infinitive *handeln* ("to act")

Singular

German

"English"

ich handele

"I act"

du handelst

"you act"

er... handelt

"he...acts"

Plural

German

"English"

wir handeln

"we act"

ihr handelt

"you act"

sie handeln

"they act"

Regular -ten Verbs

Infinitive *arbeiten* ("to work")

Singular

German	"English"
<i>ich arbeite</i>	"I work"
<i>du arbeitest</i>	"you work"
<i>er... arbeitet</i>	"he...works"

Plural

German	"English"
<i>wir arbeiten</i>	"we work"
<i>ihr arbeitet</i>	"you work"
<i>sie arbeiten</i>	"they work"

Irregular Verbs

English is full of irregular verbs. In many cases, we can turn verbs into the past tense by adding "-ed" to the end, but think of how many exceptions there are to this rule: "fly" becomes "flew," "run" becomes "ran," "buy" becomes "bought"...the list goes on!

In German, irregular verbs ("strong verbs") also follow different patterns than the regular verbs. They not only change the word endings, but the root word changes too. For example, look at the difference between *ich fahre* ("I drive") to *du fährst* ("you drive"), changing the root *fahr-* to *fähr-*.

Plurals

Remember learning all of the complicated rules for forming plurals in English when you were in grade school? We first learn that you add -s to a word to make it plural, but then comes one exception after another, such as words like "knives," "candies," and "mice."

German is even more complicated: the German language knows twelve different ways of forming the plural. So it's best to learn the plural for each new noun you learn.

Many feminine nouns are very regular in the formation of the plural; however, masculine and neuter nouns are not. Some plurals are formed with -n or -en, some with an umlaut and an -e or -en, others with -er, while loan words borrowed from other languages take a plural in -s,

such as *das Restaurant*, which becomes *die Restaurants* in the plural.

Pronouns

The grammatical term pronoun refers to a form that substitutes for a noun. And here's one fine example: instead of saying, "Amy gave the coat to Peter," you can replace all three nouns with pronouns and say, "She gave it to him." If you have mentioned Amy, the coat, and Peter before, the listener can deduce what the pronouns "she," "it," and "him" refer to and therefore understand the meaning of the sentence. German pronouns work the same way.

German pronouns of the first person refer to the speaker. Pronouns of the second person refer to an addressed person. Pronouns of the third person obviously refer to third persons.

The most well known pronouns are personal pronouns. The following chart shows the personal pronouns in the nominative case:

Singular

Construction	German	"English"
First person	<i>ich</i>	"I"
Second person	<i>du</i>	"you"
Third person	<i>er/sie/es</i>	"he"/"she"/"it"

Plural

Construction	German	"English"
First person	<i>wir</i>	"we"
Second person	<i>ihr</i>	"you"
Third person	<i>sie</i>	"they"

For Example:

German	"English"
<i>Ich gehe einkaufen.</i>	"I go shopping."
<i>Du gehst einkaufen.</i>	"You go shopping."

<i>Er/sie geht einkaufen.</i>	"He/she goes shopping."
<i>Wir gehen einkaufen.</i>	"We go shopping."
<i>Ihr geht einkaufen.</i>	"You go shopping."
<i>Sie gehen einkaufen.</i>	"They go shopping."

Articles

The extensive use of articles (definite and indefinite) is a unique feature of German. Articles can be inflected. The inflected forms depend on the number, the case, and the gender of the corresponding noun. In contrast to English where you use the definite article "the" for all genders, German distinguishes between three genders for articles: *der* (masculine), *die* (feminine), and *das* (neuter). Articles have the same plural forms for all three genders: *die*.

For Example:

German	"English"	Construction
<i>der Computer</i>	"computer"	singular, masculine
<i>die Computer</i>	"computers"	plural, masculine
<i>die Blume</i>	"flower"	singular, feminine
<i>die Blumen</i>	"flowers"	plural, feminine
<i>das Auto</i>	"car"	singular, neuter
<i>die Autos</i>	"cars"	plural, neuter

Gender

The German language, like many of the Romance languages, uses all of the three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter. Every German noun takes one of these genders, though the grammatical gender of a German noun is not necessarily the actual gender of the corresponding real-life object. It's different with nouns that signify a person: for example, *die Frau* ("woman") or *der Mann* ("man") take the grammatical gender corresponding to their sex.

German also assigns gender to nouns without natural gender. The following example of

three cutlery pieces will show this: *das Messer* ("knife") is neuter, *die Gabel* ("fork") is feminine, and *der Löffel* ("spoon") is masculine.

It's best to learn German nouns with their accompanying definite article, as the definite article corresponds to the gender of the noun. However, the ending of a noun can be used to recognize about eighty percent of noun genders. Nouns ending with the suffixes *-heit*, *-keit*, *-tät*, *-ung*, *-ik*, or *-schaft* are feminine. Most nouns ending in *-e* are likely to be feminine, though there are exceptions: for example, *die Liebe* ("love") is feminine, but *das Ende* ("end") is neuter. Nouns ending in *-er* are likely to be masculine: for example, *der Arbeiter* ("worker"), *der Computer* ("computer"). However, there are exceptions: for example, *das Wasser* ("water") is neuter.

LESSON NOTES

All About #4

How Do You Pronounce Those German Letters with the Dots?

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

4

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Basic German Pronunciation

It's often been said that German pronunciation is one of the easier aspects of the language. And guess what - it's true! But it still takes some practice, and we're here to help you with it. We'll introduce you to the ins and outs of German pronunciation and show you how it matches with and differs from English pronunciation.

Sounds and Syllables

Let's first take a look at how German sounds work. The German writing system uses eight vowels (the basic -a, -e, -i, -o, and -u and the umlauts -ä, -ö, and -ü) and twenty-two consonants (-b, -c, -d, -f, -g, -h, -j, -k, -l, -m, -n, -p, -q, -r, -s, -t, -v, -w, -x, -y, -z, and *Eszett* ß). This makes a total of thirty letters, but German uses more sounds than letters. Since German is a pluricentric language, there are a number of pronunciation variations of standard German, though they agree in most respects.

Although German is made up of letters from the Latin alphabet, German, like many other languages including English, uses the concept of syllables. The German language arranges letters in blocks of syllables to form words. A syllable is usually made up of one or some consonants and one vowel, but some of them contain only one vowel. For example, *Lehrer* (syllabic: *Leh-rer*), meaning "teacher," consists of two syllables, with each one being made up of three letters (two consonants and the vowel -e). Another example is the word *trinken* (syllabic: *trin-ken*), meaning "to drink," which consists of two syllables: the first one, *trin*, is made up of three consonants and the vowel -i, while the second syllable, *ken*, is made up of two consonants and the vowel -e.

Vowels

German vowels exist in two versions: long vowels and short vowels.

Here's a list of German vowels, spoken long and short:

Vowel	Long	Short	Example - Long Vowel	Example - Short Vowel
-a	+	+	<i>Pate</i> ("godfather")	<i>Paste</i> ("paste")

-e	+	+	<i>Erde</i> ("earth")	<i>Erbse</i> ("pea")
-i	+	+	<i>Igel</i> ("hedgehog")	<i>Insel</i> ("island")
-o	+	+	<i>Ton</i> ("sound")	<i>Tonne</i> ("barrel")
-u	+	+	<i>unten</i> ("below")	<i>Bus</i> ("bus")
-ä*	+	-	<i>Ärmel</i> ("sleeve")	-
-ö	+	+	<i>Flöte</i> ("flute")	<i>öffnen</i> ("to open")
-ü	+	+	<i>Tüte</i> ("bag")	<i>Küste</i> ("coast")

* There is no short version of vowel -ä because the short -ä vowel sounds similar to the short -e.

One quick remark about weakened vowels: in certain cases, we do not emphasize the vowel. The best example of this is the -e in the last syllable of a word at the end of sentences.

For Example:

1. *Wir wollen geh'n.*
"We want to leave."

Correctly spoken, it should sound like *Wir wollen gehen*, but it's common to say *Wir wollen geh'n*.

Diphthongs

German uses diphthongs, which are combinations of two different vowels. We also use diphthongs in English: for example, "neutral" has the diphthong "eu." The most common German diphthongs are -ei as in *Eis* ("ice cream"), -au as in *Raub* ("robbery"), and -eu as in *neu* ("new").

A combination of two vowels of the same kind is not considered a diphthong sound. For example, look at the English "school," where we find two -o vowels, indicating a long "-o."

Consonants

With approximately twenty-five phonemes, the German consonant system exhibits an average number of consonants in comparison with other languages. Like English, clusters of three or more consonants are quite common: for example, *Pflaster* ("plaster") starts with three consonants (-p-f-l).

Here we're not going to go over the pronunciation of all the consonants, but if you're interested, you can visit GermanPod101.com and listen to our pronunciation series, which is designed to help you master German pronunciation.

Stress

Let's think about stress in English for a moment. Try saying the words "important" and "interesting" aloud. When you say these words aloud, you're putting emphasis, or stress, on a certain syllable. In "important," the stress is on the *PORT* syllable. In "interesting," the stress is on the *INT* syllable. If you haven't studied phonetics before, it's probably something that just comes naturally that you've never noticed before! Because correct English pronunciation puts emphasis on certain syllables, English is known as a stress language.

German also uses the concept of stressing syllables, but there is one major difference: stress usually falls on the first syllable. In German, we call stress on the first syllable initial accent. We hold the first syllable for a longer length of time than the others and give that syllable more stress. Stress applies for all kinds of words, including nouns, verbs, adjectives, and all other parts of speech. For example, in *Arbeiter* ("worker"), we stress the first syllable, *AR-*. In *trinken* ("to drink"), we stress the first syllable, *TRIN-*.

There are some exceptions to the initial accent rule, though. Many loan words, especially proper names, keep their original stress. A French guy named *Gustáv* will still be called *Gus-TÁV*, not *GUS-tav*.

Other exceptions include verbs that end on the suffix *-ieren*. They receive stress on their penultimate syllable: for example, *stud-IE-ren* ("to study"), *ba-lan-CIE-ren* ("to balance"), and many more. And compound adverbs, starting with *her-*, *hin-*, *da-*, and *wo-* as their first syllable part, receive stress on their second syllable: for example, *her-AUF* ("up here"), *da-HIN* ("there"/"to that place"), and *wo-HIN* ("where...to").

German also distinguishes stress between separable prefixes (with stress on the prefix) and inseparable prefixes (with stress on the root) in verbs and words derived from such verbs. Words beginning with the prefixes *be-*, *ge-*, *er-*, *ver-*, *zer-*, *ent-*, and *emp-* receive stress on the second syllable. Words beginning with *ab-*, *auf-*, *em-*, and *vor-* receive stress on their first syllable.

Rarely in German, you'll encounter two homographs (words that are spelled the same but have a different meaning) with such prefixes. Consider the word *umfahren*. As *UM-fahren* (separable prefix), it means "to drive over"/"to collide with (an object on the street)," and receives stress on the first syllable. On the other hand, we stress *umfahren* (inseparable prefix) on the second syllable, *um-FAH-ren*. This word means "to drive around (an obstacle on the street)."

This might sound like a lot to consider, but remember that learning good pronunciation is one of the easier aspects of German!

LESSON NOTES

All About #5

Top Five Must-Know German Phrases

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

5

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is the Top Five Must-Know German Phrases

Here we'll introduce five phrases in German that will take you a long way and help you out in a variety of situations!

1. *Guten Tag* ("Good day," "Hello")

Guten Tag is the most common way to greet someone in German. Germans mostly use this phrase on its own, but you can combine it with other words. So maybe, for example, if you're being introduced to a new co-worker, you can use it as a formal greeting.

Guten Tag is kind of formal, but this way you don't sound impolite when you're meeting someone for the first time or when you're greeting the desk clerk in your bank branch or insurance company. In situations where you're not required to be so formal, *hallo* is a convenient word to use. *Hallo* is less formal, and you can compare it to a lighthearted "Hi!" or "Hey!" in English. You can use *Hallo* when meeting friends or getting attention from people working in stores, for example.

2. *Entschuldigung*. ("Excuse me." "I'm sorry.")

Entschuldigung is one of the most versatile phrases you will come across in Germany. *Entschuldigung* is a good phrase to use if you're trying to make your way through a crowd or in a similar situation. You can use *Entschuldigung* to get someone's attention, for example to call the waiter over at a restaurant, to get the attention of a shop clerk, or to get the attention of a passerby when you want to ask a question.

No matter how diligent you are, at some point, you're likely going to need to apologize. The neat thing is that *Entschuldigung* can double as "I'm sorry!" in some situations. If you need to apologize for something that has happened, you may use it. You can use this phrase to apologize for some kind of light trouble or mishap: for example, being too late on a date or spilling your coffee all over one's shirt, but you probably shouldn't use it when you're truly sorry.

The correct pronunciation is *Entschuldigung*, but you might hear some people pronounce it as *'schuldigung*. They leave out the prefix *Ent-*. It's quite common in spoken German nowadays. But the correct way to say it is *Entschuldigung*, so we recommend that.

3. *Bitte. Danke*. ("Please." "Thanks.")

You will hear both phrases all the time. The nuance of *Bitte* varies a little bit depending on the

situation, but the underlying message is always the same: "Please!" and the response "Thanks!"

You can ask for a tangible object by first saying what you need and then adding *Bitte* ("Please"). It's a pretty easy way to ask for something. For example, "A coffee, please" in German is *Einen Kaffee, bitte*.

We use *Bitte* more often to ask favors of or to make requests of other people. It's kind of like "Can you take care of this for me, please?" or even "thanks in advance."

If you're offering something to someone or would like someone to go ahead of you or do something before you, *bitte* also is the phrase you are looking for. Offering your seat to someone on the train? *Bitte*. Holding the door for someone and would like him or her to go right ahead? *Bitte*. At a restaurant and someone else's food came before yours and you would like that person to start eating? *Bitte*.

The appropriate response to *bitte* is *danke* ("thanks"). It's a less formal way of thanking, but it's very common because it's short and quickly spoken. In this situation on the train, the person you're offering your seat to will say *danke* before actually sitting down.

If you want to show off your manners, you can say *Herzlichen Dank*, which literally means "heartful thanks." If you say *Herzlichen Dank*, your host will be very pleased to hear you say this.

You can combine *Danke* with other words: the most prominent is *nein* ("no"). If you feel the need to refuse something, you can just put *nein* ("no") in front of *danke*. *Nein danke* ("No, thanks."). This is a very polite way to express your refusal.

4. *Das verstehe ich nicht.* "I don't understand this."

This phrase is going to be your best friend, go-to phrase, and solace. When a barrage of German follows your perfectly accented *Guten Tag*, you can stop the person opposite you and tell him or her, *Das verstehe ich nicht* ("I don't understand.").

Literally, *Das verstehe ich nicht* means ("This understand I do not"), but it's translated as "I don't understand this." This may be a high-frequency phrase for you at first, but nobody will blame you for not being able to follow their fast talking in native German. Your counterpart(s) will likely become very compassionate with your dilemma. He or she will translate the words you don't know or explain the situation comprehensibly, because he or she wants to communicate with you and involve you in the discussion.

5. *Ich weiß nicht.* ("I don't know.")

This is a very common phrase because you can use it when you don't know something but in

other circumstances as well. Learn from the Germans how to *Ich weiß nicht* every situation you wish to evade, play dumb about, or avoid. This phrase fits perfectly if you want to be evasive.

Here are some examples of when you can use this phrase:

Imagine it's Friday night. You just finished dinner with some German friends, and now they give you choices of what to do: going clubbing, watching a film in the movie theater, or doing something else. After each choice they give you, you can tell them *Ich weiß nicht* (in case you don't want to watch a film or go clubbing, etc.). The point is that using this phrase is more polite than directly turning down their suggestions.

It's a phrase that you can use in multiple situations, such as if a pedestrian asks you how late it is, but you forgot your watch at home. You can tell him *Ich weiß nicht* ("I don't know.").

Ich weiß nicht works in almost all situations, whether you don't know something or don't want to do something.

LESSON NOTES

All About #6

Quiz: 5 Things You Have to Know about Germany. Test Your Knowledge of German!

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

6

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Testing Your Knowledge of German and Germany

This lesson will build your basic knowledge of Germany by quizzing you on five areas of knowledge: Geography, Pop Culture, Travel, Economics, and Myth Busting.

I. Geography

How many federal states does Germany have?

1. thirty-two
2. eight
3. sixteen

Answer: 3. Germany has sixteen federal states, the largest of which in terms of size is Bavaria, by far. "Bavaria," in German, *Bayern*, has almost twice the size of Niedersachsen and is eighty times as big as Berlin. Furthermore, Bavaria is the most southern federal state of Germany, and its most popular city is Munich. Three federal states are considered cities likewise: Germany's capital Berlin, Hamburg, and Bremen. With a population of eighty-two million people, Germany is the most populated country in Europe. Federal state Nordrhein-Westfalen (North Rhine-Westphalia) places first with a population of about eighteen million people.

Bonus Question:

What percentage of Germany's eighty-two million people live in urban areas?

1. twenty-two percent
2. fifty-four percent
3. eighty-eight percent

Answer: 3. Eighty-eight percent of Germany's population lives in urban areas. Though Germany doesn't have a lot of big cities with a population above one million, there are a lot of cities everywhere with a population of three hundred thousand to eight hundred thousand people. Furthermore, the biggest urban areas are in the western and southern parts of the

country, except for Hamburg and Berlin. The three northernmost provinces together, amount to just thirteen percent of the overall population.

II. Pop Culture

I'm going to name three people. One is a famous singer, the next one is a politician, and the final one is a sports star. Match the person with their profession.

1. Michael Schumacher
2. Herbert Grönemeyer
3. Angela Merkel

Answer: Herbert Grönemeyer is a famous singer. He has been part of the German music business for over two decades, and is still as popular as back then, reaching Gold and Platinum status on the German pop music charts. His pop-rock songs seem to appeal to a broad variety of people.

Angela Merkel, (who holds a doctoral degree in Physics), has been the German chancellor since 2005 and is believed to be the most powerful woman in the world. Raised in the communist East Germany, she worked her way up to the political top league after the reunification of Germany.

Germany's most prominent athlete is Formula One driver Michael Schumacher. The motorsports champion won the Formula One World Cup six times between 1994 and 2003, an outstanding and unparalleled record in motorsports.

Correct Matches:

Singer - Herbert Grönemeyer
Politician - Angela Merkel
Athlete - Michael Schumacher

III. Travel Question

We will give the names of three popular sightseeing places. Please choose the one that is **NOT** in Berlin!

1. Brandenburg Gate
2. Deutscher Reichstag

3. Zugspitze

Answer: The answer is 3, Zugspitze. The Zugspitze is not in Berlin. It's the highest mountain in Germany, located in Bavaria close to the Austrian border in the Alps Mountains (700 kilometers, or 430 miles south of Berlin).

Both the Brandenburg Gate and the Deutscher Reichstag are located in Berlin. The Brandenburg Gate is a famous monument and one of Germany's main symbols. The Reichstag building was constructed to house the parliament of the German Empire. This is where the German legislature met from 1894 to 1933 and again since 1999. Actually, the Reichstag and the Brandenburg Gate are situated almost directly next to each other.

IV. Economic Question

Germany's economy ranks what number in the world?

Answer: Fourth. Germany has developed a social market economy that ranks the fourth largest in the world, only after the United States, Japan, and China. As of Europe, Germany has the largest economy. Germany also is the world's leading exporter of merchandise.

V. Debunking a Myth About Germany

True/False: The world-famous Turkish fast food, *Döner Kebab*, was actually created in a backyard in Berlin.

Answer: False! *Döner Kebab* is a Turkish meal and was invented in the eighteenth century. We can translate *Döner Kebab* as "rotating roast." This refers to a Turkish dish made of lamb or chicken meat cooked on a vertical spit and sliced off to order.

Turkish immigrants created a German variation of *Döner Kebab* in Berlin to suit German tastes. The German kebab (where the meat and salad filling is served in thick flatbread that is usually toasted or warmed) became one of Germany's most popular fast food dishes and started a victory parade around the world. It is said that Turkish emigrants exported German kebabs back into their home country.

LESSON NOTES

All About #7

German Cuisine

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

7

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is German Cuisine

What comes to mind when you think of German food? Sauerkraut and pork knuckles, perhaps? Various sausages made of pork or beef and potato? And tons of cabbage side dishes? Well, while there might be lots of potato and sausage to be found in Germany, they are merely the tip of the iceberg when it comes to German cuisine; there is a whole lot more to be discovered!

Table Etiquette

Before we go on to the food, let's first talk about German table etiquette. Before eating, it is customary to say *Guten Appetit!* (literally, "Good appetite") as a way to show gratitude for the meal. Some people even pray before they start to eat or shake hands while saying *Guten Appetit*, but you had better not do that in a restaurant. People also used to finish a meal with a saying, but this habit has vanished.

Here's a short list of things you had better not do when at a restaurant, café, or pub because Germans consider them very rude:

1. Don't wear shorts and extremely casual wear unless you are young or dining at a beach club.
2. Don't eat with your fingers.
3. Don't eat with your elbows resting on the table.
4. Don't put spoons used to stir beverages in your mouth.
5. Don't put your arms on your lap during dinner. Put them above the table.

Regional Dishes

One of the most interesting aspects of German cuisine is its vast array of regional delicacies. Each area of Germany boasts its own selection of specialty dishes that have become closely associated with the area. It is not uncommon for German people from all over Germany to travel hundreds of miles to try the different specialties in the place that they originally come from.

One of the most famous examples of regional cuisine is *Maultaschen*, a traditional Southwestern noodle dish. Its name, which we can translate as "mouth bags," derives from its shape. These square or bag-shaped noodles are reminiscent of ravioli, and stuffed with beef and herbs. This dish can be served with a salty, well-seasoned soup in a bowl or can be fried with onion. In some parts of its home region (federal state Baden-Württemberg), you can find vegetarian *Maultaschen*.

Other popular regional dishes include *Königsberger Klopse* ("cooked meatballs in a white sauce with capers"), *Rollmops* ("rolled pickled herring"), and *Germknödel* ("yeast dumpling filled with plum sauce"), and much, much more. If you have a chance to visit Germany, definitely give some of the local specialties a try!

Popular Dishes

A significant part of German cuisine is "bread," in German, *Brot*. There's basically no breakfast or supper without it. Germans consider bread necessary for a healthy diet. About six hundred different types of breads and more than one thousand types of pastries and bread rolls are produced every year. For that reason, Germany is considered to be THE "Bread Country." The importance of bread is illustrated by words such as *Abendbrot* (literally, "evening bread" and meaning "supper"), or *Brotzeit* (literally, "bread time," meaning "snack").

Bread types range from "white wheat bread" (*Weißbrot*) to "gray wheat bread" (*Graubrot*) and "black bread" (*Schwarzbrot*). The most popular bread types include: white bread, wheat-rye, toast bread, whole-grain, multi-grain, sunflower seed, pumpkin seed, and onion bread.

Very popular are "bread rolls," known as *Brötchen*, *Semmel*, *Schrippe*, or *Weckle*, depending on the region. The typical serving is a roll cut in half, then spread with butter or margarine. Meat, cheese, fish, honey, or jam are then placed between the two halves, or on each half separately.

Bread is rarely used as a side dish for the main meal. Traditionally, the main meal of the day has been lunch. Dinner has always been a smaller meal, typically consisting of bread, meat or sausages, and cheese and vegetables, but over the past fifty years, dining habits have changed. People eat only a small meal during the day and have hot dinners at home with their families.

If you were to look at the average German lunch dishes, besides popular fast food restaurants and their standardized dishes, pizza, Turkish *Döner kebab*, and sausage snacks, you would find three very common dish combinations:

1. Potatoes or french fries with meat, usually *Schnitzel*, steak or beef roll, and mixed vegetables.
2. Noodles with ground meat and tomato sauce.

3. French fries or rice with breaded or fried fish.

Common side dishes include hot vegetables (sauerkraut, peas and carrots, or cabbage) and cold vegetables (a broad variety of salads and dressings), while popular desserts are ice cream, puddings, and *Quarkspeisen*.

Seasonal Dishes

Germans love their seasons, and they especially love eating the different dishes that are associated with the different seasons. When the cold weather sets in during winter, people line up at the Christmas markets in December to eat hot potato fritters, *Grünkohl* ("colewort") with bacon, *Maronen* ("sweet chestnuts"), *Schmalzgebäck* ("olycook"), and drink *Glühwein* ("mulled wine") with winter spices such as ginger and cinnamon.

In spring, when the asparagus season sets in, you will find many dishes with *Spargel* ("asparagus") with the most popular being *Spargel mit Schinken*, where the asparagus is wrapped in ham rolls and topped with hollandaise sauce.

Top Five Foods to Try in Germany

Sausages

In Germany, you will find hundreds of different kinds of *Wurst* ("sausages"). "Boiled sausages," like *Wiener* or *Frankfurter Würstchen* and the common *Bockwurst* ("hot sausage," "grilled sausages," "fried sausages," "sausages with peel and without," and so on). But one of the most common sausage dishes is *Currywurst* ("curry sausage"). The special thing about it is that it's a large fried or grilled sausage that is served with curry powder and ketchup. This spicy sausage traditionally comes with bread, potato salad, or french fries. It's one of the most popular German lunch dishes. Walk down Main Street in Berlin and you'll find a ton of snack bars where they serve *Currywurst*.

Bauernfrühstück

We can translate this classic German dish as "farmer's breakfast," even though it actually is a lunch dish and one of the easiest dishes you can imagine. Its name dates back to a time when farmers had to work hard all day long, and as such, needed a rich breakfast. *Bauernfrühstück* is made of fried potatoes with scrambled egg and bacon, and usually arranged with pickled cucumbers.

Schnitzel

Schnitzel is a "pork cutlet without bones." It's probably the most popular meat dish in Germany. People all over the world love *Schnitzel*. When made of prime quality meat, a *Schnitzel* is mostly served pure, perhaps with some salt and a slice of lemon.

There are different versions of *Schnitzel*. Only the version coated in breadcrumbs and made from veal is called *Wiener Schnitzel*. This is best liked among Germans, even though it's an Austrian dish which was first prepared in Austria's capital Wien—Vienna.

Schnitzel in Germany is commonly made of pork coated in breadcrumbs and fried. It's served with either potato salad or potatoes with parsley and butter.

Eintopf

Eintopf in English is "hotpot." It's a traditional type of German stew, which can consist of a great number of different ingredients. The term refers to a way of cooking all ingredients in one pot, not to any specific recipe. For that reason, many different regional specialty recipes for *Eintopf* are known in Germany.

Eintopf contains of four basic ingredients: broth, green vegetables, potatoes or pulses, and often meat or sausage. The beef stock, chicken broth, or vegetable stock is often used as a foundation to which the other ingredients are gradually added. To bring out the flavor of the ingredients, numerous different kinds of kitchen herbs like lovage, chive, or parsley may be added as well as salt, pepper, and other spices.

Great examples for *Eintopf* are *Erbsensuppe* ("pea soup"), *Linseneintopf* ("lentil stew"), and *Lübecker National*, which is "made of turnip."

Kohlroulade

"Stuffed cabbage leaf," *Kohlroulade* is a dish consisting of cooked white or savory cabbage leaves, wrapped around a variety of fillings. The filling is traditionally based around meat, usually beef or pork, and is seasoned with onion, garlic, and spices. In some parts of Germany, they use lamb instead of beef or pork. First, the cabbage leaves are stuffed with the filling, then baked, simmered, or steamed in a covered pot, and eaten warm. *Kohlroulade* is served with gravy and boiled potatoes.

Top Five Foods for the Brave

Karpfen in Biersoße

This traditional German dish derives from Germany's Northeast. It's basically made of carp fish. Raw carp slices are cooked in a pot with beer sauce, made of dark beer, grease, and spices.

Pfälzer Saumagen

The name means "sow's stomach," and the stomach is integral to the dish and is not like a typical sausage casing. When the dish is finished by being pan fried or roasted in the oven, it becomes crispy. *Saumagen* is similar to the Scottish *haggis*. *Pfälzer Saumagen* originates from the German federal state of Rhineland-Palatinate and "consists of potatoes, carrots, and pork, usually spiced with onions, marjoram, nutmeg, and white pepper."

Hühnerfrikassee

Hühnerfrikassee is "blanquette of chicken," roasted gently in a pan, put in a pot, mixed with cream, egg yolk, and spices, and steamed until it's very soft. The soft, slimy texture of this dish is not well-received everywhere.

Grüne Heringe

Although *Grüne Heringe* means "green herrings," the herrings actually are not green. The color reference is a symbol to their freshness and indicates that they are not preserved pickled herrings. In Northern Germany, *Grüne Heringe* will be brushed with wheat flour, fried with butter, and then served hot.

You can find this dish at some fish restaurants in the northern part of Germany. While the taste is not the main problem, the smell of the herring fish is very, very strong. So, this is really something for the brave!

Pellkartoffeln mit Quark und Leinöl

This is a regional dish, most popular in the Spree Territory, east and southeast of Berlin (the Spree is a river). It is made of boiled potatoes with curd and linseed oil. The potatoes are boiled in their skin and then served peeled or non-peeled with a healthy portion of seasoned curd, a slice of ham, and a small jug of linseed oil.

Linseed oil can taste very bitter, so before you pour the oil over the potatoes on your plate, ask the waiter if the oil is from the *Spreewald* ("Spree forest"). There they have the freshest, least bitter linseed oil.

LESSON NOTES

All About #8

Top Five Things You Need to Know About German Society!

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

8

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Top Five Things You Should Know about Germany Society

Major Cities and How they Work

Berlin

Berlin is the capital city of Germany, and, with a population of about 3.5 million people, is the largest city in the country. It is the second most populous city in the European Union. Berlin is not only a city, but also one of sixteen federal states, called *Bundesländer*. Located in Northeastern Germany, it is the center of the Berlin-Brandenburg metropolitan area, comprising five million people from over 190 nations.

Since the Kingdom of Prussia (1701-1918), through the German Empire (1871-1918), the Weimar Republic (1919-1933), and the Third Reich (1933-1945), Berlin has been a capital city. After World War II, the city was divided into East Berlin and West Berlin. While East Berlin became the capital of communist East Germany, West Berlin became a Western exclave, surrounded by the Berlin Wall (1961-1989). With the German reunification in 1990, the city regained its status as the German capital for the whole country. Today, Berlin hosts 147 foreign embassies.

Berlin is a major center of culture, politics, media, and science in Europe. The city is home to world-renowned universities (Humboldt Universität, Freie Universität, Technische Universität), research institutes, sporting and music events, museums, and personalities. Because of its urban landscape and historical settings, it became a popular setting for international film productions.

There is no shortage of things to do and see in Berlin.

Most famous districts include:

1. *Alexanderplatz* - a popular shopping district, the location of the famous television tower, and the world time clock
2. *Potsdamer Platz* - Berlin's biggest entertainment and nightlife district
3. *Hackesche Märkte* - a really high-end area
4. *Prenzlauer Berg* - with its alternative lifestyle folks and artists

5. *Berlin Mitte* - the administration quarter with Europe's most innovative railroad station, parks, and the *Reichstag* (the place where the German legislature holds their meetings)

Berlin's young attitude, liberal lifestyle, and modern zeitgeist attract young people from all over the world. Whether you're visiting Berlin as a tourist or making a life there, you're sure to never get bored.

München

München ("Munich" in English) is the capital city of Bavaria, Germany's largest federal state in terms of size. It is located on the river Isar, north of the Bavarian Alps. München is Germany's third largest city after Berlin and Hamburg with about 1.35 million people living there.

The name *München* is derived from the Old German word for *Mönche*, which in English means "monks." It was named that way to honor the city's founders, the catholic Benedictine order.

München is famous for its traditional atmosphere. You can discover historical churches from the Middle Ages, old colorful houses, or enjoy the English Garden—a beautiful park with ever-changing vistas, winding streams, and an artificial lake. The city's motto is "Munich loves you," and this city and its people are open-minded and friendly. The Oktoberfest in September is one of Germany's most famous annual events and the world's largest fair with about six million people attending every year. München is also home to one of Germany's biggest car companies, BMW.

Frankfurt am Main

Frankfurt am Main (commonly known as Frankfurt) is the fifth-largest city in Germany and the largest city in the federal state of Hessen. The city, with its six hundred fifty thousand inhabitants, is located in central Germany at the Rhine-Main Metropolitan region. It's considered to be an outstanding industrial, financial, and commercial center in Germany and Europe.

The people in Frankfurt have a reputation for being progressive and successful. This image is due to Frankfurt being the largest financial and transportation center in continental Europe. It is the seat of the European Central Bank, the German Federal Bank, the Frankfurt Stock Exchange, and the Frankfurt Trade Fair. Furthermore, Frankfurt Airport is one of the world's busiest international airports.

Frankfurt has an amazing Manhattan-like skyline and offers a fantastic view over one of Germany's major rivers, the Rhine. Frankfurt is also the birthplace of Johann Wolfgang von Goethe, Germany's most famous author.

Family Life

The traditional German family is considered to have a working dad who financially supports the family, and a stay-at-home mom who cares for the kids. This family picture, drawn by conservatives over the past century, was rapidly falling apart with the sexual revolution of the late 1960s. Swapping over from the United States, the flower power movement was met with approval in Western Europe and especially in Germany. This led to a revolution in social habits and people changed their general attitude towards founding a family and marrying. Along with this development, gender roles were changing, too.

Since the 1970s immediate families tend to be a bit smaller compared to those of other countries. It is not uncommon for German parents to have only one or two children. This affects German society today. People are less willing to settle and are choosier about their partner. A lot of young women these days value their career, and in some cases, getting married will hinder advancements in their career plans.

Instead of needing approval from their parents, nowadays, young people are free to meet and marry whom they choose, but marriage is not the only option. Forty percent of couples between the ages of eighteen to thirty-five live together without being married. People are waiting until they are older to get married. It's a fast growing trend. And in urban areas, single parents are accepted. Children born outside marriage have the same rights as children born to parents who are married, and the single parent has no disadvantages to fear. Some couples only choose to get married because they will receive tax benefits by doing so.

In urban areas, both moms and dads work, mainly because this is the only way they can afford the lifestyle that they want. In rural areas of southern Germany, you may still find families with multiple generations living together, but this is not common in urban areas or farther north. There are different reasons for that. Houses are too small to include grandparents and other relatives outside the immediate family. And for many young families it just doesn't feel right to live together with the older generations under the same roof. Even in smaller cities and rural areas, you can see this trend to nuclear families with only the parents and children living together.

A few problems have recently been plaguing German family life and society. The one with the most impact is the falling birthrate. Fewer and fewer children are being born each year. It's gotten so bad that if this trend continues, Germany's population will start to shrink in a few years. And the government can't do much about it. They try to reverse this trend for the sake of Germany's future with family development plans and welfare programs for mothers-to-be and young mothers. But the lack of immediate support and benefits for parents with children makes the decision to have children an undesirable one in the eyes of many young people.

Work Culture and Economy

Germany's economy is ranked fourth in the world after those of the United States, Japan,

and China. Germany has a lot of strong industries, such as motor vehicles, foods, electronics, chemicals, and so on. Germany also is the world's top exporter. Some major well-known companies from Germany include Mercedes, Volkswagen, Deutsche Telekom, Adidas, and Nestle.

In Germany, the dominant work culture is quite different from what foreigners would expect. Many foreigners need some time to adapt to the German attitude towards work. People don't tend to work long hours; in many offices, especially in the public sector, the day ends at around four pm. But it's not that Germans are lazy. There is a strong emphasis on efficiency and people use their working time to be very productive. This means there is little or no time spent socializing or chatting. Exceptions are during break periods, like forty-five to sixty minutes for lunch.

The German management culture is hierarchical to a certain degree, but just for logical, decision-making reasons. Outside the office, subordinates don't need to be extremely servile towards their superiors. Germans love to work on well-thought-out plans and make factually based decisions. Meetings are well scheduled and thus punctuality is expected while lateness is not tolerated.

While Germany might be *Spitzenreiter* in the export sector, the domestic economy has some serious problems. Even though the social security system is one of the world's best, Germany suffers from a high unemployment rate. In times like these, temporary work is very common. This way, companies don't have to pay if those temporary employees are sick or go on vacation. They can hire and fire people at their leisure and expect momentary profits. There is also an increasing number of people that get just part-time positions. Some even work multiple part-time jobs. This contradicts the old concept of lifelong employment, where people stay with the same company until they retire. Twenty years ago, if you got a full-time job, you might have gotten that job for life. But this has changed drastically as more and more people are changing jobs mid-career.

Politics

Germany is a federal parliamentary republic, called *Bundesrepublik Deutschland*. Germany's democratic and social foundation is a constitution that the Allies approved after the end of World War II in 1949.

While the president still has political power as the head of state—proposing an individual as Chancellor, appointing him or her to the office, and appointing and dismissing the remaining members of the Federal Government—in practice, his role is a more ceremonial, non-political one. So he's there mostly as a symbol. The political power lies in the hands of the chancellor. The political party system is different from that of the US. Instead of a bipolar political party system, Germans established five major parties. Christian democrats (CDU) and Social democrats (SPD) are the biggest ones, the so-called big-tent parties, followed by

the Liberals (FDP), Environmentalists (*Grüne*), and the Party of the Left (*Die Linke*). Because no political party attains more than fifty percent of the seats in the German parliament, they form coalitions in order to be able to govern. This past term, both big-tent parties governed together with Chancellor Angela Merkel (Christian democrats), being the first woman to hold this position. German citizens are allowed to vote when they turn eighteen years old.

Generational Trends

German society is changing in a lot of ways. Generally speaking, the older and younger generations tend to do things differently and hold different ideas about things. The older generation tends to have a strong sense of loyalty to their company and place of work, and family is high on their priority lists. The younger generation, however, is not averse to changing jobs if there is something that they are not satisfied with, or to have to change careers midway due to a fast changing globalized market. It surely is a lack of loyalty if the younger generation changes their companies, friendships, and relationships every so often, but on the other hand, the older generation never had to deal with a globalized world economy and its opportunities, as well as the negative effects on the domestic labor market.

Times are changing and keeping up with the newest trends seems to be the ultimate goal of the younger generation. They have more of their own interests in mind. Going back to the marriage trends that we talked about earlier, they're waiting longer and longer to get married and a lot of them don't have children partly because they have their own interests in mind and partly because of a lack of immediate support and benefits for parents with children. Members of the older generation might see these developments as being selfish, though, but it will be interesting to see how German culture and society will change along with the generations.

LESSON NOTES

All About #9

Important Dates: Top Five Important German Holidays During the Calendar Year

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

9

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Top Five Most Important Holidays in Germany

Germany has many different holidays that carry a lot of meaning and years of tradition behind them. Here we'll introduce the top five most important holidays in Germany, going in reverse order starting with number five.

#5 - *Tag der Arbeit* ("Labor Day")

The fifth most important holiday in Germany is *Tag der Arbeit* ("Labor Day"). Labor Day is an annual holiday celebrated all over the world that resulted from the labor union movement. On Labor Day, people celebrate the economic and social achievements of workers. In Germany, like in many other countries, the festivities happen on May 1. The origins of Labor Day lie in the Eight-Hour Day Movement, which promoted eight hours for work, eight hours for recreation, and eight hours for rest.

In Germany, *Tag der Arbeit* was established as an official holiday in 1933 after the Nazi Party came into power. The goal of the festivities with extensive parades and shows was to symbolize the newfound unity between the state and the German people. However, just one day later, on May 2, 1933, all free unions were outlawed and destroyed in the period that followed.

Still today, we celebrate *Tag der Arbeit* in Germany, but it doesn't have the best reputation, especially in metropolitan areas. In Berlin, riots of masked autonomous groups accompany *Tag der Arbeit*, breaking shop windows, inflaming cars, and fighting the police. While this is not happening in most districts of Berlin, there are a few streets around Kreuzberg where these folks riot. This leads storeowners to nail up their stores for protection. In smaller cities and rural areas, *Tag der Arbeit* is a great day to honor the achievements of the workers, or just relax with family and friends, barbecue, and beer.

#4 - *Tag der deutschen Einheit* ("German Unity Day")

The fourth most important holiday in Germany is the *Tag der deutschen Einheit* ("German Unity Day"). It's been a national holiday since 1990 that we celebrate on October 3. On this day, Germans commemorate the anniversary of the German reunification in 1990. The reunited Germany picked this day as their new national holiday.

Alternative plans have also been discussed. An alternative would have been the day the Berlin wall came down on November 9, 1989, which also coincided with the anniversary of the founding of the first German Republic, the Weimar Republic (which lasted from 1918 until

Hitler's seizure of power in 1933). But November 9 is a troubled date, because on this day the "first large-scale Nazi-led pogrom against Jews" (known euphemistically as *Reichskristallnacht* (*Crystal night of the Reich*), or simply as *Pogrom*, which is more politically correct) happened, and was considered to be inappropriate. October 3 was chosen instead, the day of Germany's formal reunification.

While Germany was split for forty years, East and West Germany celebrated their own National holiday between 1949 and 1989. On June 17, West Germans commemorated the Workers' Uprising of 1953 in East Germany. Soviet aid crushed the revolt and thus failed. More than one hundred workers died that day. East Germany celebrated on October 7, and they called this day the Day of the Republic, celebrating the foundation of East Germany in 1949.

Each year, a huge Citizens' Festival is happening on the *Tag der deutschen Einheit*. It's an addition to the traditional celebrations in Berlin. Each year, a different federal state organizes the Citizens' Festival. This follows a strict circulation and as Germany has sixteen federal states, each state will hold the festival every sixteen years.

#3 - *Ostern* ("Easter")

The third most important holiday in Germany is *Ostern* ("Easter"). This holiday is actually a collection of two different holidays, and Germans consider it one of the most important holidays of the year. There is no fixed date when Easter happens, but there is one major rule: Easter falls on the first Sunday following the *Paschal Full Moon* ("the full moon on or after March 21").

Ostern starts with *Karfreitag* ("Good Friday") and is followed by *Ostersonntag* ("Easter Sunday") and *Ostermontag* ("Easter Monday").

Karfreitag commemorates "the crucifixion and death of Jesus Christ" and as thus is an important Christian remembrance day in all known denominations, such as Catholic or Protestant. We observe the holiday on the Friday that precedes Easter Sunday. It is believed that Jesus Christ died on the crucifix around three PM in the year 33 A.D.

While there are no major celebrations on this day, it goes along with many observances. Many Christian communities hold special services on this day. This starts with prayers and vigil services and leads to special concerts in huge churches. In Germany, which follows a strong Christian tradition, *Karfreitag* is also a government holiday at the federal level. Businesses, the stock exchange, and most malls, stores, and shops are closed on this day. The German Catholic Church even treats *Karfreitag* as a fasting day. There is only one full meal, which is smaller than a regular one and usually contains fish, with the fish being the symbol for Jesus. In addition to that, comedy theater performances and events that include public dancing are illegal on that day. Cinemas and television are not affected, though many TV channels might show religious material.

Easter celebrations take place two days after *Karfreitag*.

The Christian tradition says that Jesus rose from the dead two days after he died on the crucifix. Everywhere in Germany, Christian communities celebrate together, worshipping his rise from the dead. Later, families get together in private on Easter Sunday and eat an Easter meal together. After the meal, many families like to go out together in the afternoon for a relaxing Easter walk. And the children search for colored Easter eggs that the *Osterhase* (the "Easter Bunny") has left for them.

The question remains, how worshipping Jesus and searching for colored eggs fit together. The answer to that question is simple, they don't. Like many other Christian holidays, Easter has become commercialized and mixed with non-Christian traditions like the ones mentioned above. A look into European history might explain this; European tribes had their own traditions and pagan rituals. Christianity was brought to most of them later. So, the church decided to celebrate the resurrection of Christ together with an old pagan holiday on the same date, hoping the resurrection story would expel the old pagan rites and celebrations.

Another Easter tradition is the Easter Fire. It is very common in Bavaria where many towns begin their celebration of Easter early in the morning. They light a fire in an open area in town before sunrise. This symbolizes the triumph of life over death. People at the fire then light candles and proceed to church.

#2 - *Silvester* ("New Year's Eve")

The second most important holiday in Germany is *Silvester*, which is "New Year's Eve." We celebrate it on the last day and night of the old year, December 31. That's why it has a symbolic meaning. *Silvester* is even more important to the public than New Year's Day. Berlin hosts one of the largest *Silvester* celebrations in Europe. Over one million people attend it. The celebration takes place around the Brandenburg Gate where everybody waits for the fireworks at midnight.

Germans also have a reputation of spending large amounts of money on firecrackers and fireworks. It's a huge market. The timeframe for selling firecrackers is very limited though and stores are just allowed to sell them during the few business days between Christmas and New Year's Eve. In every city, town, or village, you will find people getting together to ignite fireworks and firecrackers. This usually starts in the afternoon of New Year's Eve and lasts way beyond midnight.

In many cultures, there are special New Year's dishes that people traditionally prepare for the new year. While there is no such tradition in Germany, and people usually prepare their personal favorite dish, like lasagna, stuffed cabbage leaf, or roast ribs, there is a pastry traditionally prepared for New Year's Eve, *Berliner Pfannkuchen!* It's a "round-shaped cruller," made of dough, often topped with plain sugar or icing and filled with jam or plum jelly. Some people like to play a party game where they fill one cruller with mustard instead of jam. The

person that catches the one with mustard loses the game.

Silvester in Germany is also a huge thing on domestic TV. Each New Year's Eve is broadcast on several German television stations, and a short English theatrical comedy is broadcast every year since 1972, titled *Dinner for One*.

#1 - *Weihnachten* ("Christmas")

The most important holiday in Germany is *Weihnachten*, which is "Christmas." The observance of Christmas in Germany begins with *Adventszeit* ("Advent time"), the period from Advent to Christmas. Advent starts with the first day of December. Many young children are given Advent calendars to count down the days until Christmas, which in Germany is celebrated for three days from December 24 to December 26. These calendars have little windows for each day of Advent. The kids open a new window every day and find little pieces of chocolate or other treats. These "sweet" calendars help them pass the days until Christmas.

Germans start to celebrate Christmas on a day called *Heiligabend* ("Christmas Eve"), the evening of December 24. During this time, families get together for Christmas dinner and exchange gifts by the *Weihnachtsbaum* (the "Christmas tree"). This ritual "gift exchange" is called *Bescherung*. Along with it, "Santa Claus," who in Germany is called *Weihnachtsmann*, appears to bring Christmas presents to the children. But before *Bescherung* and dinner, many families go to church services in the afternoon or evening. Families with little children go to the shorter children's services, where a *Krippenspiel* ("a nativity play") takes place.

In the evening, the family comes together at home. In some families, the whole family comes together and in others, Christmas Eve is celebrated only by the "small" family, whereas the whole family (with grandparents, uncles, aunts, and others) and friends come together on the first or second Christmas Day, December 25th and 26th.

Some notes on the "Christmas tree": The *Weihnachtsbaum* is usually put up by December 24. It can be bought at special traders' sites, but many Germans used to go into the forest to get one themselves. In the morning or during the church service in the afternoon, one of the adults prepares the tree at home with Christmas bulbs and tinsel, usually in the living room. It's also common to turn on electric lights or decorative candles. Then they place the gifts under the tree, or in case somebody plays Santa Claus, they only place the presents for the adults there. When the family comes home, it's time for singing Christmas carols and other winter songs or playing on guitars and pianos, before the *Bescherung* ("the exchange of presents"). The gifts are wrapped in colorful paper and the children unwrap them immediately, and then often play with their new toys before dinnertime. Many families also prepare colorful, decorated paper bags or carton plates for each member of the family, full of chocolates and sweets, which often have the shape of angels or Santa Claus.

Traditionally, on Christmas Eve, we serve a simple meal in contrast to the big meals on the following Christmas days. Very popular Christmas meals are roast goose or chicken, and

fondue with many types of meat and roast lamb.

Another very famous Christmas food is *Stollen*. It's a loaf shaped "fruitcake," powdered with sugar icing on the outside. We usually make the cake with chopped candied fruit, nuts, and spices. It's a traditional German cake, and we usually just eat it during the Christmas season.

LESSON NOTES

All About #10

German Pop Culture

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

10

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Top Five Things You Need to Know about German Pop Culture

As popular culture changes quickly and drastically, in this lesson, we focus on the most recent pop culture. Please keep in mind that we wrote this lesson in 2009.

Popular Music

Together with the UK, Germany boasts the largest music industry in Europe and one of the largest in the world. Metal and hard rock bands like *Rammstein* are largely popular worldwide.

In the 1990s, pop and rock groups singing in German language had only limited popularity. Only a few artists managed to be played on the radio, like *Rammstein*, *Die Prinzen*, or *Rosenstolz*. Almost all other German bands sang in English, probably because their management wanted to sell their music internationally. Looking back at the 1990s, people now make fun of that time, calling it the "Decade of Techno." Techno, trance, and dance music was widely accepted in the German mainstream market, and events like the Berlin Love Parade had about a million visitors. Only German punk-rock bands like *Die Ärzte* or *Die Toten Hosen* had unbroken success, even with German-language lyrics.

This changed drastically in 2002 with the success of *Wir sind Helden*, a German pop-rock band that showed an impressive musical self-confidence. Lead singer Judith Holofernes and her band mates had a message: Be yourself and don't follow trends just because others are doing it! Several other bands followed this success, for example, *Silbermond*, *Sportfreunde Stiller*, and *Tokio Hotel*.

Since 2002, German-language rock and pop music gained ground and met a broader acceptance, especially the band *Tokio Hotel* who has had an enormous success, nationwide and on an international level. *Tokio Hotel* is a phenomenon. They polarize the masses. Many love them for their unique Japanese-like Emo style and pop-punk music. Others hate them for exactly the same reasons. Despite all criticism, they are a perfect example for a band that tops all charts with German-language songs that are meaningful to thousands of German teenagers.

Those alternative bands have to share their success with pop star idols, like Xavier Naidoo. His music style consists of crossovers, including

The management also does a lot in the background to push their success. One of the most

popular idol producers is *Dieter Bohlen*. He is a notorious former pop idol himself, but he transforms everything he touches to gold.

Popular Movies

Lots of people watch and enjoy Hollywood movies, but recently, German movies have seen a rise in popularity again. Apparently, the annual box-office revenue for domestic movies hit a high in 2004, 2006, and 2008. Before that, German movies have been popular in Europe back in the 1980s, when Wolfgang Peterson's submarine thriller *Das Boot* and Otto Walkes' comedies reached millions of people in Germany.

The success story of Germany's domestic film productions continues from the 2000s, and started with famous TV comedian and film director Michael Herbig's first feature-length comedy hit *Der Schuh des Manitu* ("The Shoe of Manitu"), drawing 11.5 million people into German cinemas. That was the starting point for a lot of successful German films. Comedies like *Sieben Zwerge* ("Seven Dwarfs"), but also serious dramas like the Adolf Hitler-themed *Der Untergang* ("The Downfall") and Academy Award winner *Das Leben der Anderen* ("The Lives of Others," focusing on the espionage system in communist East Germany), had massive success.

Another trend is the revival of the provocative and innovative New German cinema that was scandalous and popular in the 1970s. Experimental films include *Lola rennt* ("Run Lola Run") from Tom Tykwer, Oliver Hirschbiegel's *Das Experiment* ("The Experiment"), and socio-critical films, for example, *Gegen die Wand* ("Head-On") by Fatih Akin, and *Baader-Meinhof-Komplex* by Ulli Edel. These new, innovative films are starting to gain more recognition internationally. Through these and other films, German actors got attention and went on to start careers in Hollywood. For example, *Till Schweiger* in "Tomb Raider: The Cradle of Life," *Franka Potente* in "The Bourne Identity," and *Daniel Brühl* and of course *Christoph Waltz* (who was born in Austria but possesses a German passport) in Quentin Tarantino's blockbuster, "Inglorious Basterds."

One more note on German film studios: the financiers of major German film releases. The biggest production studios are Bavaria Film, Constantin Film, Studio Hamburg, and UFA (Babelsberg/Berlin). Moreover, Berlin and the huge film studio Babelsberg are recognized shooting locations for international productions like "The Bourne Supremacy" and "Aeon Flux."

Popular Television

The German television system differs from those of other Western countries. This is due to Germany having two broadcasting concepts: public broadcasting networks and private broadcasting networks. Analyses indicate that young people usually prefer watching shows on private channels, while older people prefer the public networks.

Public or private, Germans love reality formats, especially quiz shows like "Who wants to be a Millionaire," casting shows, and talk shows. Concepts of these shows are often bought from models in the United States or the UK, like *Deutschland sucht den Superstar*, which is the German version of the famous "American Idol." Comedy shows are popular, too, regardless of the format: scripted, unscripted, experimental, late night, there is an audience for each format.

The show with the best ratings is *Wetten, dass?! ("I bet I can do this?!")*. This game and entertainment TV show is the most successful TV show in Europe. Its attraction lies in a unique combination of ordinary people offering to perform some unusual — often bizarre and difficult — task, and the top-ranking celebrity guests, chatting with the host and betting on the outcome of these performances. The guest list is huge: Bill Gates, Arnold Schwarzenegger, Angelina Jolie and Brad Pitt, Michael Jackson, Bon Jovi, and Leona Lewis. International artists use this show to promote their new movies or CDs in front of a massive audience.

Also very popular are "Telenovelas," hour-long soap operas shown in the afternoon. *Sturm der Liebe ("Storm of Love")* is the most successful show of its genre, and has been sold to fifteen foreign countries, including Austria, Canada, and Finland. Crime dramas are popular, too. Some of them are extremely long-running shows, coming back every season since the late 1970s. *Tatort ("Crime scene")* has been the most popular one for over thirty years now. The situation is different with experimental formats and non-mainstream shows. Some are renewed for a follow-up season and beyond, but that depends on the ratings, audience's response, and the studio's goodwill.

At the same time, foreign-made dramas enjoy their fair share of popularity. Titles such as "CSI," "24," "Lost," "Fringe," "Heroes," "Supernatural," and "Desperate Housewives" have been broadcast on television and are widely available for rental at video stores around the country.

Famous Germans

Quite a few German people have made a name for themselves abroad through the world of entertainment, literature, and fashion. If we look at entertainment, actors like Till Schweiger and Franka Potente are successful internationally, but another famous German actor in Hollywood is Armin Mueller-Stahl. He played in films like "X-Files," and together with Tom Hanks in the 2009 summer blockbuster, "Angels

Roland Emmerich, the German filmmaker, left his mark as Hollywood's disaster movie specialist with films like "Independence Day," "Godzilla," "The Day after Tomorrow," and the upcoming "2012." Emmerich is also famous for the sci-fi adventure "Stargate" and "The Patriot," a war epic set in the American Revolutionary War.

Other famous Germans abroad include Hans Zimmer, who is one of Hollywood's finest composers. His works include soundtracks for "Gladiator," "Black Hawk Down," "The Last

Samurai," and the "Pirates of the Caribbean" series. Also famous, is contemporary author Cornelia Funke, known for her children's book trilogy *Tintenherz* ("Inkheart") and in the world of fashion, Paris-based designer Karl Lagerfeld. The controversial Hamburg-born designer is the head designer for the fashion house Chanel.

Popular Sports Figures

Soccer is without a doubt the most popular sport in Germany. Germany has many popular *Fußballvereine* ("soccer clubs"). Most popular are *Bayern München*, Germany's number one club, and *Borussia Dortmund*. Both play in Germany's Major League and won the competition several times. Germany also has a strong national soccer team. The German *Nationalelf* won the World Championship three times, (in 1954, 1974, 1990), and placed third in the 2006 World Championship that was held in Germany. Germans love to describe those summer weeks as "The Magic Summer," where a new spirit set in and they showed their hospitable side to the world.

A very famous German soccer player is Michael Ballack, who used to be captain of Germany's national team. He led his team to third place in 2006's World Championship and to second place in 2008's European Championship. He has represented Germany ninety-two times and scored the winning goal against Portugal in the 2008 European Championship.

Other famous sports figures include blonde giant Dirk Nowitzki, (standing at seven feet), who has been a famous basketball player for the NBA's Dallas Mavericks since 1998.

Germany's most famous sports figure is Michael Schumacher. The motorsports champion won the Formula One World Cup six times between 1994 and 2003, an outstanding and unparalleled record in motorsports.

LESSON NOTES

All About #11

Top 5 Tools for Learning German

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

11

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Top Five Useful Tools for Learning German

The following great tools will aid you in your German studies:

I. Babylon

Babylon is an advanced translation and information source utility program. The most prominent feature is its single-click translation option. When you click on text with the right mouse button, a popup window appears instantly with a translation and definition of the clicked word (in German, English, French, Italian, Hebrew, etc.). Its patented technology and single-click activation work with any Windows program like Word, Excel, and Outlook, browsers like Internet Explorer, Firefox, and Chrome, and other programs like Adobe's Acrobat Reader for PDF documents.

Babylon is very easy to use and is a must when navigating German web pages and documents. You can buy an advanced version of the software, or use two online services which are free of charge and do not require any software installation: the "Free Online Translation," a dictionary for bilingual translation, and the "Free Online Dictionary," for monolingual lookup.

Link: Babylon website: <http://www.babylon.com>

II. Voca: Free Online Vocabulary Trainer

The software Voca is a free vocabulary trainer for foreign languages. With the help of Voca, you will be able to manage your own German word lists and share them online. Voca offers different types of exercises and tests, especially grammar and pronunciation exercises. You can choose between tests with open answers, multiple-choice, or a self-check. Voca also supports multiple translations of a single word.

III. LEO/dict.cc – Free Online Dictionaries

LEO ("Link Everything Online") is a free online dictionary and translation dictionary, available in English, German, French, Spanish, Italian, and Chinese. The translations are provided as hyperlinks to further dictionary queries. This also includes back translations. LEO's open collaborative nature (where individuals or companies can add or correct dictionaries) led to extensive references to the translations in the form of example phrases of language in use and discussions on the LEO language forum. The English-German dictionary was the first one to go online back in 1995. It contains more than five hundred

thousand entries and receives an average of ten million queries per day.

Another high-quality online dictionary is dict.cc. It is an English-German/German-English dictionary with an extensive database of translations and sample sentences. A group of professional translators put it together and continues to update it regularly. As a result, dict.cc contains a huge number of difficult and obscure terms, colloquial expressions, and technical terms. dict.cc is free of charge. Just follow the link and have fun learning German!

Links: LEO website: <http://www.leo.org>

dict.cc website: <http://www.dict.cc>

IV. Social Networking Services (Facebook, Twitter,)

Using dictionaries and vocabulary trainers might help you to improve reading and writing in German, but you can't learn a language without actually using it. While there might be no native Germans around your neighborhood, you will find conversation partners online. Sign up free of charge for one of the big social networking services like *Facebook*, and look for German friends. Search for "German conversation" on the group lists for example. You will find a list of groups and people sharing an interest for German culture and language, and it is very likely you will meet someone who would practice German with you via voice and video chat (Skype or Google Talk).

Your German conversation partner is just a click away!

Links: Facebook: <http://www>.

Twitter: <http://www.twitter.com>

: <http://www.plus>.

V. Meetup.com

Meetup.com is a Social Networking Service (SNS) that was created for the purpose of offline group meetings in various localities around the world. Meetup is one of the fastest-growing social networking sites, with about 5.7 million members, over sixty-six thousand groups and twenty-four thousand interests. Once you complete registration, which is free, you can find and join groups unified by a common interest, such as politics, movies, careers, hobbies, or language exchange and international communication.

This service is perfect for you if you're learning German but you don't know any native speakers to practice with. If you become a member, you can either search for German-language meetup groups in your area, or start a group by yourself. Even if you are just getting started with German, this is an innovative way to practice speaking German and get some nice cultural insights from other group members in a friendly pub atmosphere.

Link: Meetup.com: <http://www.meetup.com>

LESSON NOTES

All About #12

Top 5 Classroom Phrases in German

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

12

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Top 5 Classroom Phrases in German

In this lesson, we will teach you the top five most useful phrases your German teachers are sure to use!

I. "Please repeat after me. "/"Please say it."

Sprechen Sie mir bitte nach means "Please repeat after me." As a variation, you might also hear *Bitte nachsprechen*, which is the impersonal form. The teacher will use both phrases when they want you to repeat exactly what they have said. If the teacher points to a word on a blackboard and wants you to say it, he might say *Sagen Sie das bitte*. ("Please say it.")

II. "Please look."

Schauen Sie bitte means "Please look," and when an object (usually a noun or pronoun) comes after the phrase, it means "Please look at (object)."

For Example:

1. *Schauen Sie bitte zur Tafel*
"Please look at the blackboard."
2. *Schauen Sie bitte zu mir*
"Please look at me."

III. "Please read it (aloud)."

Lesen Sie das bitte vor means "Please read it aloud." You can expect to hear this if the teacher wants you to practice reading some word, phrase, or passage. There is also an impersonal way of expressing "please read it" in German. It's *Bitte vorlesen*.

IV. "Please write it down."

Schreiben Sie das bitte auf means "Please write it down." The teacher may use this when they want you to practice writing the letters, words, or sentences. The impersonal form for this phrase is *Bitte aufschreiben*. In a class setting, a speaker would use this when the speaker doesn't want to address you directly, yet still wants to make sure you get his request.

V. "Do you understand?"

The most direct translation is *Verstehen Sie das?* However, it is much more common to ask *Haben Sie das verstanden?* This is perfect tense and we can translate it as "Did you understand?" The teacher will often use this question to confirm understanding. Another variation that is used is *Alles in Ordnung?* This literally translates to "Is it/everything okay?" If the teacher wants to ask if there are any questions, they might also ask *Gibt es noch Fragen?* This means "Are there any questions?" You can answer the question with *Ja* ("yes") or *Nein* ("no").

LESSON NOTES

All About #13

Top 5 Phrases Your Teacher Will Never Teach You

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

13

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is Some Very Common German Expressions You Might Not Learn From a German Teacher

I. *Cool*

Cool is an adjective meaning "wow," "amazing," or "great." It's a foreign word, obviously borrowed from the English adjective "cool."

II. *Idiot*

Idiot is a noun meaning "idiot" or "fool." When used with the suffix *-isch* as in *idiotisch*, it becomes an adjective meaning "stupid." Another noun meaning "fool" is *Blödmann*, which literally means "stupid man."

III. *Nee, ne!*

Nee is slang for *nein* ("no"), and *ne* is an abbreviation for *nicht (wirklich)*, meaning "not (really)." When used as an exclamation, it corresponds to "No way!" or "Really!?" in English. Other phrases with the same meaning that are often used are:

1. *Echt?*
"Really?"
2. *Echt jetzt?*
Literally, "Really now?"
3. *Nicht im Ernst!*
"Are you serious?"

Words Used by Young People

IV. *voll*

Voll is a slangy adverb that usually comes before adjectives to emphasize them, making this word the equivalent of "very," "so," or "really." For example, *schwer* means "difficult," so *voll schwer* would mean "really difficult" or "so difficult."

II. *krass*

Krass is a very slangy word that has a few different meanings. When used to describe something, it can have either a good meaning or a bad meaning depending on the context. For example, *Dieser Film ist krass!* ("This movie is *krass!*") could either mean that the movie was great, or that it was bad. And if the person says *Voll krass!*, they emphasize it even more. When used as an exclamation (*Krass!*), it usually indicates that something is wrong and roughly means "oh no!" or "shoot!"

For example, "*Krass!* I overslept!" meaning "Oh no! I overslept!"

III. *Auf keinsten*

Auf keinsten is a slang phrase and an abbreviation of *auf keinen Fall*, meaning "under no circumstances," or "no way." It is grammatically wrong but still used in spoken German.

IV. *Geil*

Geil is very colloquial and is a synonym of the above-mentioned *cool*. In young people's speech, if something is *geil*, it's "amazing" or "great." Some people, especially older people, are annoyed if someone says *geil* because when they were young, *geil* meant "to be sexually aroused" and the word can still be used in that way.

Common Interjections

Germans frequently use interjections during conversations. While there are some that show that the listener is paying attention to and understanding the speaker, there are others of a more significant nature. Some common ones include:

Expressing Agreement:

1. *Ja*
"yes," "yeah"
2. *Aha/uh-huh*
"I understand" (sometimes together with nodding the head)

Expressing Surprise:

1. *Wow!*
"Wow!" "Whoa!" (usually, positive surprise)
2. *Oh!*
"Whoa!" "Oh!" (positive or negative surprise)

Other Expressions:

1. *Mhh./Hmm.*
"Mm-hmm."
2. *He!*
"Watch out!"
3. *Hä?*
"I don't understand."

LESSON NOTES

All About #14

Top 5 Tips for Avoiding Common Mistakes in German

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

14

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson Is to Offer Tips to Help Students Overcome Common Errors That Learners of German Make.

Tip #1: Think German!

The number one mistake made by beginners is thinking too literally and translating word-for-word. Our advice is: "Think German!" As you progress, you will see that even as a beginner you can learn to 'think' in German, even if it's just in phrases at the beginning. If you just keep translating from English to German, you're doing something wrong. You might always make the same grammatical or vocabulary mistakes. That is not what we recommend you to do.

German doesn't always put things together like English. So, try to hear German in your head! Read German books, listen to German podcasts, radio, or TV shows, and speak German, because that's an effective way to learn it.

Tip #2: The Thing with *Sie* and *Du* – Watch your Politeness Level!

Besides English, many languages in the world know at least two kinds of "you" - the "you" used in formal situations, and another "you" for informal, familiar use. German distinguishes between the formal *Sie*, always written with a capital -S, and the familiar *du*. *Sie* is used to address one person (singular) and multiple persons (plural). In familiar situations, the singular form is *du*, while the plural is *ihr*. It is important to remember to speak formally to one's teachers, elders, and anyone else who follows under the category of civil servant, clerk, or officer.

The English language has known this distinction in the past; "you" was used for *Sie* and "thou" or "thee" was related to *du* or *ihr*. For some reason, English now uses only one form of "you" for all situations. Because of this lack of distinction, English speakers often have problems learning when to use *Sie* (formal) and *du* or *ihr* (familiar). The problem extends to verb conjugation and command forms, which are also different in *Sie* and *du* situations.

Formal Situation:

1. **Singular:**
Wie heißen Sie?
"What's your name?"

2. **Plural:**
Wie heißen Sie? (to a group of people)
 "What are all your names?"

Informal situation:

1. **Singular:**
Wie heißt du?
 "What's your name?"
2. **Plural:**
Wie heißt ihr?
 "What are all your names?"

Tip #3: Watch Your Case!

Unlike English, which usually doesn't inflect nouns and adjectives, German still inflects nouns, adjectives, and pronouns into four grammatical cases. Case in German is indicated by the endings on articles and adjectives. The four German cases are nominative, genitive, dative, and accusative case. The case of a noun depends on its grammatical function in the sentence.

1. *Nominativ* ("nominative"): the subject of the sentence; the thing doing the action
2. *Genitiv* ("genitive"): the possessor of something
3. *Dativ* ("dative"): the indirect object
4. *Akkusativ* ("accusative"): the direct object, which is receiving the action

Example: *der Sitz* ("the seat" masculine)

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominativ	<i>der Sitz</i>	<i>die Sitze</i>
Genitiv	<i>des Sitzes</i>	<i>der Sitze</i>
Dativ	<i>dem Sitz</i>	<i>den Sitzen</i>

Tips #4 and 5: Watch Out for Semantic Differences!

"Semantic" is a linguistic term and refers to the meaning of a word. In many cases, the meaning of a German word cannot be transferred perfectly from German to English and vice versa; words and their translations don't match one hundred percent or are not one hundred percent equal. Here, we will show you two considerable semantic differences, and we're going to explain them. We will explain how to distinguish between a friend and a romantic partner and take a look at the different meanings of "to study."

Tip #4: "Friend"

There are two different words for "friend" in German: *Freund* is masculine and *Freundin* is feminine. When talking about more than one female friend, use the plural *Freundinnen*. When talking about more than one male friend or male and female friends together, use the plural form, *Freunde*.

We reserve the German term *Freund* for close friends. Germans put emphasis on a distinction between public and private spheres and are choosy about who they allow into their personal inner circle. For that reason, they probably just have a few really good *Freunde*, while most people outside their inner circle are *Bekannte* ("acquaintances").

We also use the words *Freund* and *Freundin* when talking about romantic partners: *Freund* meaning "boyfriend" and *Freundin* meaning "girlfriend." The sentence *Peter ist mein Freund* ("Peter is my (boy-)friend.") might be ambiguous; Peter could either be her boyfriend or just one of her close friends. To avoid this ambiguity, we often use the phrase *ein Freund von mir* or *eine Freundin von mir* ("a friend of mine") to indicate that someone is just a friend.

Examples:

1. *Peter ist mein Freund.*
"Peter is my boyfriend." or "Peter is my friend." (ambiguous)
2. *Peter ist mein fester Freund.*
"Peter is my steady boyfriend." (partner, lover)
3. *Peter ist ein Freund von mir.*
"Peter is a friend of mine." (friend, pal, buddy, mate)

Tip #5: The Difference Between "to study" and "student"

"to study"

In English, "to study" means "to learn," "to read," "to practice," or "to memorize." In German, we distinguish between two verbs: *lernen* and *studieren*. While we use *lernen* to encompass these learning activities, the meaning of *studieren* is very limited. It means "to be a university student" or "to major" in a particular subject.

Examples:

1. *Ich lerne Deutsch.*
"I'm learning/studying German." (for a test)
2. *Ich studiere Deutsch.*
"I'm majoring in German." (at College or University)

"student"

The English word "student" can refer to anyone who attends school, (from elementary school to college or a university). In German, a *Student* (masculine), or *Studentin* (feminine), is a person attending a university or another institution of higher education. We use the terms *Schüler* (masculine) and *Schülerin* (feminine) to describe students in primary or secondary education (elementary, middle schools, junior high, or high schools).

Bonus Tip: Watch Out for Similar Sounding Words!

Even though there is a relatively huge number of possible sounds in German, there are many words that sound exactly the same or almost the same but with different meanings. As a beginner in German, it can be easy to mix up similar sounding words.

Some infamous examples include:

1. *Lehre* (noun, meaning "science" or "theory") vs. *Leere* (noun, meaning "emptiness")
2. *Trend* (noun, meaning "trend") vs. *trennt* (verb, third singular person, "to split")
3. *Wände* (noun, meaning "walls") vs. *Wende* (noun, meaning "turn," "change")
4. *Pisste* (verb, third singular person, "to pee") vs. *Piste* (noun, meaning "course," "runway")
5. *Arm* (adjective, meaning "poor") vs. *Arm* (noun, meaning "arm" as in the body part)

LESSON NOTES

All About #15

Top Five Favorite Phrases from the GermanPod Hosts

CONTENTS

2 Grammar

15

GRAMMAR

The Focus of This Lesson is the Top Five Phrases from the GermanPod Hosts

We are presenting some additional phrases here because of their practical use (phrases 2, 4, and 5), their frequently requested meaning or translation (phrase 1), and their frequent use in Germany (phrases 3 and 4).

Phrase One: *Gesundheit!* ("Bless you")

This phrase is a classical request from learners of German. They want to know how to say, "Bless you" when a person sneezes.

Literally, *Gesundheit* means "health," but in this context, we use it as "Bless you."

Use *Gesundheit* to address an unknown person or someone in a formal situation as well as to address a friend or someone in an informal context.

In a very formal context (for example a college examination, or at the immigration authorities), you might want to apologize for sneezing.

One more note for our English speakers out there: Don't make any reference to religion in Germany when someone sneezes, save that for when you're swearing (but that's another subject that would require a whole lesson)!

Phrase Two: *Wo wir gerade davon sprechen* ("Now that you mention it...")

This phrase means "Speaking of which" or "Now that you mention it" and you can use it when you are reminded of something and want to talk about it. For example, let's say your friend is talking about party "A" that took place last week, which reminds you of party "B" coming up next week. You can change the subject to party "B" by saying *Wo wir gerade von Parties sprechen...* ("Speaking of parties...") and starting to talk about it. Using *Wo wir gerade davon sprechen* is a natural way to segue into something related to the conversation at hand.

A more casual way to express "Speaking of which," or "Now that you mention it," is the German phrase *Wo du es sagst*. This phrase literally means, "As you say it," but we also use it as "Now that you mention it."

Phrase Three: *Ist gut./Ist in Ordnung.* ("It's okay/good.")

The Germans use these two short sentences all the time and in every possible context. Grammatically speaking, *gut* ("good") is an adjective describing someone or something,

while *in Ordnung* is a combination of the preposition *in* ("in") and the noun *Ordnung* ("order"), meaning "It's all right."

Both phrases, *Ist gut* ("it's okay/good.") and *Ist in Ordnung* ("It's all right."), can refer to tasting or smelling a delicious meal or drink. We can also use *Ist gut* and *Ist in Ordnung* to tell someone that his/her work was good. In this case, we will most likely add the demonstrative pronoun *das* to clarify our intention. We will say *Das ist gut* ("This is okay/good.") or *Das ist in Ordnung* ("This is all right.").

Ist gut and *In Ordnung* are phrases that also show that you have understood information or instructions given to you or that you will comply with what someone has told you. As an exclamation, *Ist gut!* and *In Ordnung!* are very close in meaning to "Roger!" or "Copy that!" in English, but in German, you can use these phrases lightly among friends.

There are contexts where we'll just make use of *Ist gut* ("It's okay/good.").

We use *Ist gut* ("It's all right.") when referring to how well things are done. For example, you will say *Ist gut* when implying *Ist gut gemacht* ("It is well done."). Anytime you can say *Ist gut gemalt/geschrieben/gedacht!* etc. ("It's well painted/written/thought," etc.), then use *Ist gut*.

Finally, you can use *Ist gut* (!) when you are tired of someone picking at you or making fun of you, and you want him/her to stop. Your intonation will then sound more annoyed and the conveyed meaning is "Leave it be." or "It's enough."

Phrase Four: *In der Tat* ("Indeed")

We can translate the phrase *In der Tat* as "Indeed" or "That's for sure." We say this phrase in response to someone who is speaking. When you use *In der Tat* after something that someone has said, it means that you agree with the speaker on that point, even if you don't agree with him or her on other things. In this way, it's very similar to the phrases "That's true," "Indeed," or "That's for sure!" in English.

Phrase Five: *Für's erste...* ("For now"/"In the meantime")

Für's erste is a handy phrase that means "In the meantime" or "For now." Literally translated, this phrase means, "For the first," but we commonly use it as, "For now."

We can use *Für's erste* to talk about some kind of action you take or decision you make "in the meantime," when you feel like it's better than doing nothing. For example, if you don't know what to order at a restaurant but at least know what you want to drink, you can order your drinks using *Für's erste nehm ich ein Bier*, which means "I'll have a beer for now (while we're trying to decide)."



Pronunciation S2

German Vowels

1

Grammar Points

2

Grammar Points

The Focus of This Lesson is German Vowel Sounds.

Introduction

More than 100 million German speakers speak German fluently (as a native or adopted language). Use it regularly so you start on the right foot, can understand others, and they can understand you. Learning the German sounds will help you to become sensitized to the language's different sounds and better master its pronunciation.

Be aware though, this pronunciation guide is for standard German—the one you'll hear on the radio or television. When traveling in Germany, you'll hear many different accents and vocabulary words used specifically in the region you are in.

For example, in the Southern regions of Germany, you may hear *Weckle* instead of *Brötchen* to refer to a "bread roll" in bakeries and supermarkets. The usage of different words for the same things is due to different dialects and thus influences from other languages neighboring the German territories. Like in Saarland, a small province at the French border, foreign words adopted from France mark the dialect.



Sounds

Let's first take a look at how German sounds work. The German writing system knows eight vowel letters (the basic -a, -e, -i, -o, -u, and the umlauts -ä, -ö, -ü), and twenty-two consonants [-b, -c, -d, -f, -g, -h, -j, -k, -l, -m, -n, -p, -q, -r, -s, -t, -v, -w, -x, -y, -z, and *Eszett* (a sharp -s) -ß]. This makes a total of thirty letters, twenty-six letters form the alphabet and four extra letters, but German uses more sounds than letters. Those thirty letters give rise to forty speech sounds. Among these sounds, there are two main categories.

1. Fifteen vowel sounds
2. Twenty-five consonant sounds.

Since German is a pluricentric language, there are a number of pronunciation variations of standard German, which means even more vowel and consonant sounds, though they agree in most respects.

Today, we will look at the fifteen vowel sounds in detail with many simple examples.

One quick remark about the terms "sound" and "vowel"; in this lesson, we are going to refer to sounds as vowels. So whenever we refer to "vowel," think "sound," don't think "letter."

The Fifteen Vowel Sounds

A vowel is a sound in spoken language, like the German "ah!" or "oh!" and we pronounce it with an open vocal tract. When saying "ah!" the mouth stays open at the end. Consonants, on the other hand, show constriction or closure at some point along the vocal tract. So, when saying "hm," the mouth is closed. In German, the sounds that the vowels make do not change. They sound very similar to the vowels found in Spanish or Italian. Let's take a look at them.

The Five Basic German Vowels

1. **-A:** pronounced [ah], like the -a in "father"
2. **-E:** pronounced [eh], like the -e in "net"
3. **-I:** pronounced [ee], like the -ee in "meet"
4. **-O:** pronounced [oh], like the first part of the -o sound in "so"
5. **-U:** pronounced [oo], like the -oo in "mood"

Like English, German vowels exist in two versions, long vowels and short vowels. In this guide long vowels are indicated with a colon (:) (-a:, -e:, -i:, -o:, -u:) to distinguish them from their short counterparts. In German, the long and short version of a vowel is called a vowel pair.

1. First is the -a pair. You can find the long -a: vowel in *Pate* ("godfather"), and the short one in *Paste* ("paste").
2. Next is the -e vowel pair. You can find the long -e: as in *Erde* ("Earth"), and the short -e as in *Erbe* ("pea").
3. Next is the -i pair. You can find the long -i: in *Igel* ("hedgehog"), and the short -i is in *Insel* ("island").
4. This is followed by the -o vowel pair. You can find the long -o: in *Ton* ("sound"), and the short -o is in *Tonne* ("barrel").
5. The last pair is the -u vowel pair. You will find the long -u: in *unten* ("below"), and the short -u is in *Bus* ("bus").

To sum up here, -a, -e, -i, -o, and -u are the basic vowel pairs we know from the alphabet, representing ten distinct vowel sounds. The German language additionally uses five extra sounds—the so-called umlauts. "Umlaut" refers to a type of "sound shift" in spoken language. While there are five umlaut vowel sounds in German, there are only three vowel letters to represent them orthographically.

The Three Umlaut Vowel Letters

1. -Ä
2. -Ö
3. -Ü

The Five Umlaut Vowel Sounds

1. [Ä:]
2. [Ö:]
3. [Ö]
4. [Ü:]
5. [Ü]

As with the basic vowel pairs, the -ö and -ü umlauts also have a long and a short version.

1. The -ä vowel: In many German regions, we only use the -ä vowel in a long version, -ä:, as in *Ärmel* ("sleeve"), while the short -ä vowel is similar to the short -e.
2. The -ö vowel pair: You can find long -ö: in *Flöte* ("flute"), and short -ö in *öffnen* ("to open").
3. The -ü vowel pair: You can find long -ü: in *Tüte* ("bag"), and short -ü in *Küste* ("coast").

Vowel Chart

Here's a list of German vowel pairs, pronounced long and short:

<i>Vowel</i>	<i>Long</i>	<i>Short</i>	<i>Example (Long Vowel)</i>	<i>Example (Short Vowel)</i>

-a	+	+	<i>Pate</i> ("godfather")	<i>Paste</i> ("paste")
-e	+	+	<i>Erde</i> ("Earth")	<i>Erbse</i> ("pea")
-i	+	+	<i>Igel</i> ("hedgehog")	<i>Insel</i> ("island")
-o	+	+	<i>Ton</i> ("sound")	<i>Tonne</i> ("barrel")
-u	+	+	<i>unten</i> ("below")	<i>Bus</i> ("bus")
-ü*	+	-	<i>Ärmel</i> ("sleeve")	-
-ö	+	+	<i>Flöte</i> ("flute")	<i>öffnen</i> ("to open")
-ü	+	+	<i>Tüte</i> ("bag")	<i>Küste</i> ("coast")

*There is no short version of the -ä vowel, because the short -ä vowel sounds similar to the short -e.

Vowel Articulation

While the mentioned classification of vowels is very basic (the only criterion of distinction is the long or short vowel sound), we want to introduce a more advanced classification of vowels. We can divide the German vowel sounds into different articulation features, which define the vowel's quality.

They are divided into the three groups as follows: height, backness, and roundedness.

I. Height

If we speak of the height of a vowel, we refer to the vertical position of the tongue relative to either the roof of the mouth or the aperture of the jaw. There is a distinction between high vowels (where the tongue is positioned high in the mouth) and low vowels (where the tongue is positioned low in the mouth).

Nowadays, it is not common to refer to high and low vowels anymore; the terms closed and open vowels are preferred.

A. Closed Vowels

The long -i:, -u:, and -ü: vowels are closed vowels.

Examples:

1. -i: as in *Miete* ("rent") with a silent -e following -i as an indicator for long -i:
2. -u: as in *Mut* ("courage")
3. -ü: as in *prüfen* ("to check")

B. Near-Closed Vowels

The short -i, -u, and -ü vowels are near-closed vowels.

Examples:

1. -i as in *Bitte* ("request")
2. -u as in *Mutter* ("mother")
3. -ü as in *Müll* ("garbage")

Then there are vowels that are in the middle.

C. Closed-Mid Vowels

Those vowels are the long -e:, long -o:, and long -ö: vowels.

Examples:

1. -e: as in *sehen* ("to see")
2. -o: as in *Ostern* ("Easter")
3. -ö: as in *Höhle* ("cave")

4. Open-Mid Vowels

Those vowels are the long -ä:, short -e, short -o, and short -ö vowels.

Examples:

1. -ä: as in *Ärmel* ("sleeve")
2. -e as in *Bett* ("bed")
3. -o as in *Tonne* ("barrel")
4. -ö as in *Hölle* ("hell")

5. Open Vowels

Those vowels are the long -a: and short -a.

Examples:

1. -a: as in *Graf* ("earl")
2. -a: as in *Staat* ("state"), (with double -a vowel indicating the long -a:)
3. -a as in *Stadt* ("city")

II. Backness

Vowel backness describes the position of the tongue during the articulation of a vowel relative to the back of the mouth. We distinguish between three major degrees of vowel backness: front, central, and back.

A. Front Vowels

Front vowels (where the tongue is positioned forward in the mouth) are the -i, -ü, -e, and -ö pairs, as well as long -ä:

B. Central Vowels

Vowels in central position are the long and short -a vowels.

C. Back Vowels

Those vowels where the tongue is positioned towards the back of the mouth are the -u and -o vowel pairs.

III. Roundedness

With the parameter of roundedness, we distinguish whether the lips are rounded or not when forming a vowel.

A. Rounded vowels

The vowel pairs -o, -ö, -u, and -ü are rounded.

B. Unrounded vowels

Unrounded vowel pairs are the -a, -e, and -i vowel pairs, as well as the long -ä.

Height, backness, and roundedness are the three major articulation features of German vowels, but there are more than these three vowel qualities in other languages, like nasality, which you can find in foreign words from French. Nasality refers to vowels where the velum is lowered and some of the air travels through the nose while speaking the vowel.

Some examples for nasality are *Teint*, *Genre*, *Parfum*, and *Jongleur*, where the [ʔ] sound represents nasalization.

Vowel Articulation Chart

	<i>Front</i>				<i>Central</i>		<i>Back</i>	
	<i>unrounded</i>		<i>rounded</i>		<i>unrounded</i>	<i>rounded</i>		
	short	long	short	long	short	long	short	long
<i>Closed</i>		[i:]		[ü:]				[u:]
<i>Near-Closed</i>	[ɪ]		[ʊ]				[u]	
<i>Closed-Mid</i>		[e:]		[ö:]				[o:]
<i>Open-Mid</i>	[e]	[ä:]	[ö]				[o]	
<i>Open</i>					[a]	[a:]		

Indicators for Long and Short Vowels

There are fifteen vowel sounds, but just eight vowel letters. When we read a German book, we're not able to find out whether we pronounce a particular vowel short or long. The question is, how do we know when to pronounce a vowel short and when long?

That is one of the more complex questions. To answer it to everyone's pleasure, we need to explain the concept of syllables.

The Concept of Syllables

Although German is made up of letters from the Latin alphabet, German (like many other languages including English) uses the concept of syllables. A syllable is a unit of organization for a sequence of speech sounds. Those sounds (vowels and consonants) are arranged in blocks of syllables to form words. A syllable is usually made up of one or some consonants and one vowel, with the vowel usually building the core (nucleus) of the syllable.

For Example:

1. *Lehrer* [syllabic: Leh-rer], meaning "teacher," consists of two syllables, with each one being made up of three letters (two consonants and the vowel -e).

Other Examples:

1. *trinken* [syllabic: trin-ken], meaning "to drink," consists of two syllables. The first one, *trin-*, is made up of three consonants and the vowel -i, while the second syllable, *-ken*, is made up of two consonants and the vowel -e.
2. *arbeiten* [syllabic: ar-bei-ten], meaning "to work," consists of three syllables.

Whether any particular vowel letter represents the long or short vowel sound is not completely predictable, but there are some regularities.

1. If a vowel (other than -i) is at the end of a syllable or followed by a single consonant, we usually pronounce it long; for example, *Hof* ("yard") and *Tor* ("gate").
2. If the vowel is followed by a double consonant (-ff, -ss, or -tt), -ck, -tz, or a consonant cluster, like -st or -nd, it is nearly always short. We only use double consonants to mark preceding vowels as short; we never pronounce the consonant itself lengthened or doubled.

Examples:

1. The -o vowel in *hoffen* ("to hope") is short, because it is followed by -ff.
2. The first -e vowel in *schmecken* ("to taste") is short, because it is followed by -ck.
3. The -a vowel in *Stand* ("booth") is short, because it is preceded by st- and followed by -nd.

Though these rules are indicators for long or short vowel pronunciation, there are lots of exceptions; and because German is a pluricentric language, there are lots of regional differences.



Pronunciation S2

Basic German Consonants

2

Grammar Points

2


Grammar Points

The Focus of This Lesson is German Consonant Sounds.

Introduction

Some of the German consonants are particularly challenging to produce for foreigners. A common example is the pronunciation of the letter -r, as there are different ways to pronounce this consonant in German. One of the -r consonants sounds like the Russian [r] sound—the vibrated rolling [r] (also called a trill sound), which you will hear in southern regions of Germany a lot. People have often imitated this sound and made fun of the sound in movies.

In order to re-establish all the respect that the letter -r deserves, as well as to teach you all the other German consonant sounds, we've put together a very helpful consonant sound pronunciation guide. As you may already know, the German alphabet is composed of twenty-six letters and four extra letters that depict forty speech sounds, of which twenty-five are consonant sounds. Today, we will look at the nineteen basic consonant sounds, which are divided as follows:

- 
1. Plosives: [p], [b], [t], [d], [k], [g]
 2. Fricatives: [f], [v], [s], [z], [h], [ʃ]
 3. Affricates: [tʃ]
 4. Approximants: [j], [ɹ]
 5. Trill/Vibrants: [r]
 6. Nasals: [m], [n], [ŋ]

But because this classification is quite complex, for the audio lesson, we distinguished between:

1. -r sounds (fricative and vibrant): [r], [ʀ]
2. Basic *fortis-lenis* pairs (voiceless/voiced pairs): [p-b], [t-d], [k-g], [f-v], [s-z], and [tʃ]
3. Other consonant sounds: [h], [j], [ɹ], [m], [n], [ŋ]

This guide will follow the original scientific classification of the basic consonant sounds, but we will also summarize the meaning and impact of the *fortis-lenis* pairs.

Basic Consonants

I. Plosives

"Plosives" are also called "blocked sounds" or "stop sounds," because we produce these consonant sounds by stopping the airflow in the vocal tract. The air is blocked through the mouth and pharynx with a sudden release. These sounds are much easier to reproduce than the different -r sounds, for example, as they are very similar to the English consonants. You'll certainly find it easier to pronounce words that start with the letter -b as in "ball," or its German translation *Ball*.

German Phonetic Symbol	German Grapheme Symbol	German Keyword	Similar to English	Other German Grapheme/ Note
[p]	/ p /	<i>Partner</i> ("partner")	"p <u>o</u> wer"	-
[b]	/ b /	<i>Bucht</i> ("bay")	"b <u>a</u> y"	-
[t]	/ t /	<i>Tee</i> ("tea")	"t <u>a</u> ke"	-
[d]	/ d /	<i>Donner</i> ("thunder")	"d <u>a</u> d"	-
[k]	/ k /	<i>Katze</i> ("cat")	"c <u>a</u> b"	when [k] follows a short vowel sound, it's written -ck as in <i>dick</i> ("thick")
[g]	/ g /	<i>Gras</i> ("grass")	"g <u>r</u> ound"	-

The German language knows six basic plosive sounds.

1. [p] as in *Partner* ("partner") or *Oper* ("opera") is a voiceless consonant sound.
2. [b] as in *Bucht* ("bay") is its voiced counterpart. When producing [p] or [b] sounds, make sure that a puff of breath goes along with them. Try saying words like "bat" or "bit" while holding your hand in front of your mouth to make sure you can feel the puff of air. Your lips also have to bump into each other while producing these consonant sounds. (For more information on the difference between voiceless and voiced consonant sounds, please check the last chapter of this guide, "Basic Fortis-Lenis Pairs.")
3. [t] as in *Tee* ("tea") is a voiceless consonant sound.
4. [d] as in *Donner* ("thunder") or *danke* ("thanks") is its voiced counterpart.
5. [k] as in *Katze* ("cat") or *König* ("king") is a voiceless consonant sound. In certain cases, when [k]

follows a short vowel sound, it's written as -ck. An example is *dick* ("thick"), where the short -i vowel is followed by -ck.

6. [g] as in *Gras* ("grass") or *groß* ("big") is its voiced counterpart.

II. Fricatives

"Fricatives," also called "sibilant consonant sounds," are produced by forcing air through a narrow opening by placing two parts of the mouth together, such as by closing the teeth tightly when pronouncing the -s consonant sound.

German Phonetic Symbol	German Grapheme Symbol	German Keyword	Similar to English	Other German Grapheme/Note
[f]	/ f /	<i>frei</i> ("free")	"f <u>ather</u> "	/v/ as in <i>Vater</i> ("father") in words with /v/ of German origin
[v]	/w/	<i>Winter</i> ("winter")	"v <u>acation</u> "	/v/ as in <i>Vase</i> ("vase") in words with /v/ of foreign origin
[s]	/s/ /ss/ /ß/*	<i>Hast</i> ("rush"), <i>Fass</i> ("barrel"), <i>Fuß</i> ("foot"),	"b <u>u</u> s"	/ss/ after short vowels, /ß/ after long vowels and diphthongs
[z]	/ s /	<i>Saft</i> ("juice")	"z <u>oo</u> "	sometimes /ts/ in foreign words, as in Tsunami
[h] [h] (silent -h)	/ h / / h /	<i>Haus</i> ("home") <i>sehen</i> ("to see")	"h <u>ome</u> " -	/h/ is pronounced in syllable onset and when preceding a vowel, and the silent /h/ occurs after a vowel
[?]	/ r /	<i>Raum</i> ("room")	-	another /r/ sound is the tongue-trilled [r], mainly spoken in

				South Germany
--	--	--	--	---------------

*Ligature -ß never occurs in the initial position of a word. For that reason, there is no capital letter displaying -ß. If words are entirely set in capital letters, we replace -ß with a capital double -s, (-SS). Example: *Straße* à *STRASSE* ("street"/"road")

The German language knows six basic fricative consonant sounds.

1. First is [f], a voiceless sound, pronounced like the -f in the English word "father." To pronounce it correctly, your lower lip and your upper teeth need to rub each other. German examples for the -f sound are *Hafen* ("harbour"), *Fahrt* ("trip"), and *Fischer* ("fisherman").
2. The [v] sound is the voiced counterpart to [f]. While its phonetic symbol is /v/, it's mostly written with the letter -w. We pronounce this consonant sound as [v] in the English word "vacation." German examples are *Winter* ("winter") or *Wunsch* ("wish"). When you say [v], you use your lower lip and upper teeth to express it.*

The next fricative sound is the voiceless [s]. To pronounce it correctly, keep both your upper and lower incisors almost closed, as if you're trying to produce a hissing sound like a snake. We pronounce it as [s], as in the English word "bus." Note that the [s] sound can't occur in the initial position of a word.

Three graphemes represent the [s] sound: /s/, /ss/, and the ligature grapheme /ß/ (Eszett). The /s/ grapheme can appear in various positions of a word, but we don't pronounce it as [s] in the initial position. A common example is *Hast* ("rush"). It is a German spelling convention to use the ligature /ß/ after long vowels such as *Straße* ("street") with the long -a vowel, and after diphthongs such as *äußerst* ("extreme"), while we use the /ss/ grapheme after short vowels such as *Wasser* ("water"). You will never find it at the end of a word or syllable or before a consonant.

1. The [z] sound is the voiced/soft counterpart to the sharp [s]. You can compare the [z] sound to the English [z] in "zoo." It's written with the same -s letter from the alphabet we use for the voiceless [s] sound, and appears only if it forms the syllable onset. German examples are numbers *sechs* ("six") and *sieben* ("seven"), or *Ansage* ("announcement").
2. Another fricative consonant sound is the [h] sound, written with the /h/ grapheme in German. It can be compared to [h] in the English word "home." When [h] occurs at the syllable onset or precedes a vowel, then we pronounce it. German examples are *Haus* ("home"), *haben* ("to have"), or *Abhang* ("slope"). When -h follows a vowel, it is silent and only indicates that a vowel is lengthened. An example for silent -h is the verb *sehen* ("to see").
3. Unlike English, German uses two different -r sounds, the uvular [ʀ] and the tongue-trilled [r]. Both -r sounds can't be compared to the English -r sound. The most common German -r sound is

the uvular [ʁ], a fricative sound, produced when air 'rubs' against the back of the throat. The result is a sound similar to a light clearing of the throat. German examples are *Raum* ("room") and *rauchen* ("to smoke").

***Note on the Grapheme Symbols for [f] and [v] Sounds:**

In many cases, we express the [f] sound with the grapheme /f/. But in *certain* cases, we use *the* grapheme /v/ to express the [f] sound. For example, the German word for "father" (*Vater*) starts with a /v/ instead of an /f/, but we pronounce it [f]. On the other hand, there are words written with grapheme /v/, but spoken as [v], like *Vase* ("vase"). The only rule you need to remember is that we pronounce German words with grapheme /v/ as [f] in words of Germanic origin and [v] in words of foreign origin.

III. Affricates

"Affricates" are "consonant sounds that begin as stops" (often alveolar stops like [t] or [d]), but are released as fricatives (like [s] or [z]), rather than being released directly into the following vowel.

German Phonetic Symbol	German Grapheme Symbol	German Keyword	Similar to English	Other German Grapheme/ Note
[ts]	/ z /	Zoo ("zoo")	"cats"	/t/ in words of Latin origin such as <i>Aktion</i> ("action")

The German language knows four affricate sounds. Most prominent is the [ts] affricate. We always pronounce -z, the last letter of the alphabet, as [ts], as in the English word "cats." We usually express the consonant sound [ts] with the grapheme /z/. German examples are *Zoo* ("zoo") and *Ziel* ("goal").

A [ts] also indicates that the preceding vowel is short. For example, in the word *Akzent* ("accent"), the vowel -a is short, followed by -k and -z.

Sometimes, we express [ts] with the /t/ grapheme. This applies for foreign words of Latin origin. A prominent example is the German word *Aktion*, which in English means "campaign" or "action." We pronounce the letter -t as [ts].

IV. Approximants

"Approximants" are "sounds that are considered to be intermediate sounds" between vowels and



typical consonants. If you want to articulate them, it is important to narrow the vocal tract, but also leave enough space for air to flow without much audible turbulence. They are more open than fricatives.

German Phonetic Symbol	German Grapheme Symbol	German Keyword	Similar to English	Other German Grapheme/ Note
[j]	/j/	<i>Januar</i> ("January")	"yes"	-
[ɪ]	/ɪ/	<i>Land</i> ("country")	"lamp"	double consonant: <i>bell en</i> ("to bark")

The German language knows two approximants, [j] and [ɪ]. In words of German origin, we pronounce [j] similar to the English [y] in "yes," but in modern loanwords, it follows the pronunciation of the language it's taken from. For example, the pronunciation of the word *Jazz* in German is adapted from English, and therefore not spoken like a German [j].

We pronounce the English [ɪ], which is a rather dark sound, far back in the mouth. In contrast, we pronounce the German [ɪ] at the front of the mouth with the tongue flatter, so that you can touch the back of the front teeth. Therefore, it is called a "clear -ɪ" or "front -ɪ" and is much lighter than the dark "-ɪ" sound.

V. Trill/Vibrants

A "trill" or "vibrant" is a "consonant sound produced by one or various vibrations" that are caused by building up pressured air in one of the mouth organs (in German, usually the tip of the tongue or the uvula) that are then suddenly released.

German Phonetic Symbol	German Grapheme Symbol	German Keyword	Similar to English	Other German Grapheme/ Note
[r]	/r/	<i>Richter</i> ("judge")	-	-

The German language knows just one trill sound, the tongue-trilled [r]. This -r sound is mainly used in southern varieties of standard German. For native English speakers, especially of US-American descent, the tongue-trilled [r] is easier to pronounce than the more common uvular [ʀ]. (For the uvular [ʀ] sound, check chapter three: Fricatives.)

[r] and [ʀ] Sound in Syllable Coda

In the syllable coda of German words, we commonly substitute the [r] sound with the allophone [ʀ] ("schwa"), which sounds almost like the German umlaut vowel [ä]. For example, the German noun *Richter* ("judge") is made of two -r letters. While we can pronounce the first -r as the tongue-trilled [r] or the uvular [ʀ], we substitute the last two letters, -er, with "-ʀ," and for that reason, we pronounce the noun [Richtä], instead of [Richter].

* Refers to the pronunciation of a German word, not its actual spelling.

VI. Nasals

We produce a nasal consonant sound with a lowered velum in the mouth that allows air to escape freely through the nose. The oral cavity acts as the resonance chamber for nasal sounds, but the air doesn't escape through the mouth, as it is blocked by the lips or tongue.

German Phonetic Symbol	German Grapheme Symbol	German Keyword	Similar to English	Other German Grapheme/ Note
[m]	/ m /	<i>Mann</i> ("man")	" <u>m</u> other"	double consonant: <i>ko mmen</i> ("to come")
[n]	/ n /	<i>Norden</i> ("north")	" <u>n</u> orth"	double consonant: <i>re nnen</i> ("to run")
[ʀ]	/ ng /	<i>singen</i> ("to sing")	"to <u>s</u> ing," "to <u>s</u> wing"	- words of German and foreign origin: /ng/ - in some words of French origin: /nd/ as in <i>Gra nde Dame</i>

Like English, the German consonant system uses three nasal sounds. Those are [m], [n], and [ʀ].

The bilabial [m] sound is built with the lips closed. Like with the [b] and [p] sounds, your lips have to bump into each other while producing the sound. We pronounce it like [m] in the English word "M

anhattan." German examples are *Mann* ("man") and *Milch* ("milk").

The alveolar [n] sound is built with the tongue placed against the superior alveolar ridge, close to the sockets of the superior teeth. We pronounce it like [n] in the English word "North." German examples are *Norden* ("north") and *Pfanne* ("pan").

The velar [ʁ] sound is built with the back part of the tongue pressed against the back part of the roof of the mouth. We pronounce it like [ʁ] in the English word "angry." In written German, we express it with the letters -ng. German examples are *singen* ("to sing") and *bringen* ("to bring").

Basic Consonant Articulation Chart

	Places of Articulation						
	Bilabial	Labiodental	Alveolar	Palatal	Velar	Uvular	Glottal
Plosive	[-p], [b]		[t], [d]		[k], [g]		
Fricative		[f], [v]	[s], [z]			[ʁ] ("-r")	[h]
Affricate			[tʃ], [dʒ]				
Approximant			[l]	[j]			
Trill/Vibrant			[r]				
Nasal	[m]		[n]		[ŋ]		

Appendix (Places of Articulation)

1. **Bilabial:** consonants articulated with both lips.
2. **Labiodental:** consonants articulated with the lower lip and the upper teeth.
3. **Alveolar:** consonants articulated with the tongue against or close to the superior alveolar ridge (which contains the sockets of the superior teeth).
4. **Palatal:** consonants articulated with the body of the tongue raised against the middle part of the roof of the mouth.
5. **Velar:** consonants articulated with the back part of the tongue against the back part of the roof of the mouth (known as the velum).
6. **Uvular:** consonants articulated with the back of the tongue against or near the uvula, which is further back in the mouth than velar consonants.
7. **Glottal:** consonants articulated with the glottis (a combination of the vocal folds and the space between the folds).

Basic Fortis-Lenis Pairs

The terms *fortis* and *lenis* refer to German consonant sounds that we pronounce either "voiceless" or "voiced." Those consonants occur in pairs at the same place of articulation. And while the German language is a pluricentric language (where there is no standard German, but a bunch of standard German dialects), in some parts of the country we pronounce those fortis-lenis pairs differently; sometimes always voiced or voiceless. But in general, we always produce fortis consonant sounds with more muscular tension than lenis consonant sounds.

This guide follows the pronunciation rules of the northern standard dialect, where all ten consonant sounds occur.

Ten basic consonant sounds build five fortis-lenis pairs. Those five pairs are: [p-b], [t-d], [k-g], [f-v], and [s-z].

If you are unsure about how to pronounce these consonants, please check chapter one: "Plosives," and chapter two: "Fricatives," of this guide. The plosive fortis-lenis pairs include: [p-b], [t-d], and [k-g], while the fricative pairs are [f-v] and [s-z].

Fortis consonants are pronounced voiceless, while lenis consonants are pronounced voiced. The fortis/voiceless consonants are: [p], [t], [k], [f], and [s].

The lenis/voiced consonants are: [b], [d], [g], [v], and [z].

Terminal Devoicing

In most varieties of German, the opposition between fortis and lenis (voiced and voiceless), is neutralized in the syllable coda. This is due to "terminal devoicing," or *Auslautverhärtung*, as this is called in Germany. This rule applies for the voiced consonants -b, -d, and -g, which we pronounce [p], [t], and [g] in the syllable coda.

Examples for terminal devoicing are:

1. *Lob* ("praise")
2. *Freund* ("friend")
3. *Hoffnung* ("hope")

These three German nouns end with consonant letters for voiced consonant sounds:

-b in *Lob*, -d in *Freund*, and -g in *Hoffnung*. But instead of pronouncing them as voiced consonant sounds [b], [d], and [g], we will pronounce them as their short, voiceless counterparts [k], [p], and [t].

For Example:

1. **Lop* ("praise")
2. **Freunt* ("friend")
3. **Hoffnunk* ("hope")

* Refers to the pronunciation of a German word, not its actual spelling.



Pronunciation S2

German Diphthongs and Grouped Consonants

3

Grammar Points

2

Grammar Points

This Lesson Focuses on German Diphthongs and Consonant Pairs.

Introduction

In the past two lessons, you learned how to use and pronounce basic vowel and consonant sounds that make up the German language. In this guide, we will introduce you to German diphthong vowel sounds and we'll work with you on some more complex consonants—grouped consonants.

Diphthongs

A "diphthong" (Greek: *di* meaning "two," and *phthongos* meaning "sound"), also called a "gliding vowel," is a unitary vowel that changes quality during its pronunciation. The vowel sound glides with a movement of the tongue from one articulation to another. Diphthongs occur in many languages, also in English and German. English examples for diphthongs are "eye," "cow," and "boy." This contrasts with "monophthongs," or "pure" vowels, where the tongue holds still and the quality doesn't change. Examples for monophthongs are [a] in "father," [e] in "net," [i] in "inter," and [o] in "home."

Diphthongs can form when separate vowels run together in fast speech. However, here we will take a look at unitary diphthongs, as we introduced in the aforementioned English examples, which are heard by listeners as distinct vowel sounds. The German language consists of three major diphthongs, shown in the list below.

Diphthong Chart

German Phonetic Symbol	German Grapheme Symbol	German Keywords	Similar to English
[a??]	/ ai / / ay / / ei / / ey /	<i>Mai</i> ("May"), <i>Bayern</i> ("Bavaria"), <i>Ei</i> ("egg"), <i>Herr Meyer</i> ("Mr Meyer")	"eye," "kite"

[a??]	/ au /	A uge ("eye"), H aus ("house"), F rau ("woman")	" <u>ow</u> ," " <u>house</u> "
[???]	/ äu / / eu / / oi /	H äuser ("houses"), E uro ("Euro"), h eute ("today"), P arano i a ("paranoia")	" <u>oy</u> ," " <u>noise</u> "

The three common German diphthongs are [a??] (ei), [a??] (au), and [???] (eu). Note that we can spell two of these diphthongs in several different ways, namely [a??] (ei) and [???] (eu). For that reason, non-native speakers might have a hard time identifying a diphthong in a text or article. The most common varieties of [a??] are /ai/ and /ei/, and of [???] are /äu/ and /eu/.

Example:

1. *Herr Meier baut heute ein Haus.*
"Mr. Meier builds today a house." (literal translation)
"Today, Mr. Meier builds a house."

As silly as this example sentence might sound, it includes the three major German diphthongs. The diphthongs in this sentence are [a??] (ei) in *Meier*, [a??] (au) in *baut* and *Haus*, and [???] (eu) in *heute*. Please note that we pronounce German diphthongs short and clipped, not drawn out as they are in English.

Diphthong Example List

Diphthong	German Examples
[a??] (ei)	<i>Mai, Hai, Maier, Bayern, Heide, reisen, leise, Meier, Meyer</i>
[a??] (au)	<i>Haus, Maus, Frau, Auge, auch, auf, aus, brauchen</i>
[???]	<i>Häuser, Fräulein, Feuer, Freude, Leute, heute,</i>

(eu)	<i>Parano<u>ia</u></i>
------	------------------------

Other Diphthongs in German

For ages, and even today, there is a debate whether the digraph /ie/ represents the fourth German diphthong, but many linguists argue that instead of being a diphthong, /ie/ is just a spelling variant of the long [i:] vowel sound, as in *Liege* ("couch"). This argumentation is widely accepted, because there is no glide in the sound quality when pronouncing /ie/.

Another diphthong that we rarely use is [ui], which appears in interjections; for example, *pfui* ("ugh!").

Grouped Consonants

We don't consider grouped consonants to be diphthongs—a term we only use for combinations of two vowel sounds. A "grouped consonant" or "consonant cluster" describes "distinct consonant sounds of the German language, displayed by a group of consonant letters."

I. Postalveolar Consonant Sounds

A consonant is supposed to be postalveolar if the tongue is near the back of the alveolar ridge (which contains the sockets of the superior teeth), though not as close to the superior teeth as alveolar consonants (like [s] or [z]), but instead further back in the mouth.

In German, there are two fricative and two affricate consonant sounds that are built postalveolar.

The Fricative Postalveolar Sounds [ʃ] and [ç]

Remember that we produce fricatives by forcing air through a narrow opening by placing two parts of the mouth together, such as by closing the teeth tightly when pronouncing the [s] consonant sound.

[ʃ] is a voiceless consonant sound, made of three letters: "-s" plus "-c" plus "-h," and in written German, displayed with the grapheme /sch/. We pronounce the German [ʃ] consonant sound like [ʃ] in the English word "ship."

Example for the [ʃ] sound:

1. *In der Schule habe ich ein schönes Mädchen getroffen.*



"In school, I met a pretty girl."

The [ʃ] sound can be found in *Schule* ("school") and *schön* ("pretty").

In foreign words of English descent, we write [ʃ] as "-s" plus "-h," /sh/, leaving out the letter -c. Examples are *Show* ("show") or *Shareware* ("shareware").

Another written variety of [ʃ] is the grapheme /ch/. We pronounce German words of foreign origin like *Chef* ("chief") or *charmant* ("charming") with [ʃ] as well.

One more note on the [ʃ] sound in written German. You might find German words, where we do not pronounce /sch/ or /sh/ as [ʃ], but we speak each separately. This can happen if the first syllable of a word ends with the letter -s, and the following syllable begins with the letters -h or -ch. Examples are *Häschen* ("bunny," syllabic: *Häs-chen*) or *Grashalm* ("Blade of grass," syllabic: *Gras-halm*).

The voiced counterpart to [ʃ] is [ʒ]. The [ʒ] sound just occurs in the initial position of words of foreign origin, and in written German we express it with the letter -g. We pronounce this consonant like [ʒ] in the English word "vision." German examples for the [ʒ] sound are *Genre* ("genre") or *Genie* ("genius").

Example:

1. /ʒ/ and /ʃ/ together in a sentence:

Ich bin ein Genie in der Schule.

"I am a genius in school."

The Affricate Postalveolar Sounds [tʃ] and [dʃ]

Remember that affricates are consonant sounds that begin as stops (often alveolar stops like [t] or [d]), but we release them as fricatives (like [s] or [z]), rather than releasing them directly into the following vowel.

The affricate [tʃ] is a voiceless consonant sound. We pronounce [tʃ] with a light -t sound before -ʃ. We pronounce the affricate [tʃ] as the -ch in the English word "chance." In German, we write this consonant sound with the letter combination /ch/. German examples are *Check* ("check") or *Chip* ("chip").

The voiced counterpart to [tʃ] is the [dʒ] consonant sound. Pronounce [dʒ] with a light -d sound before -ʃ. We pronounce it as the -j in the English word "jungle." In German, we write this affricate with the letter combination /dsch/, and it appears in few loanwords only.

Postalveolar Consonant Chart

German Phonetic Symbol	German Grapheme Symbol	German Keywords	Similar to English
[ʃ]	/sch/ /sh/ /ch/	<i>Schule</i> ("school"), <i>Show</i> ("show"), <i>Chef</i> ("chief")	" <u>sh</u> ip"
[ʒ]	/g/	<i>Genre</i> ("genre"), <i>Genie</i> ("genius")	"vi <u>si</u> on"
[tʃ]	/ch/	<i>Check</i> ("check")	" <u>ch</u> ance"
[dʒ]	/dsch/	<i>Dschungel</i> ("jungle")	"ju <u>ng</u> le"

Additional [ʃ] Sounds

Other consonant clusters with [ʃ] we use often include [ʃp] and [ʃt] sounds. In written German, both sounds appear as /sp/ and /st/.

In standard German dialect, at the beginning of a word, the -s letter in /sp/ and /st/ sounds like [ʃ]. For that reason, we pronounce words with /sp/ or /st/ in the initial position of a word as [schp] or [scht].

Examples are *Spiel* ("game") or *sprechen* ("to speak"), and *Stadt* ("city") or *studieren* ("to study"). Both grouped consonants might look like the English /sp/ or /st/, found in "speak" or "stone," but we pronounce them [schp] or [scht].

If you have trouble pronouncing [ʃp] and [ʃt], think of the English word "shine" and say it a few times. Then just say /ʃ/ with round lips and an open mouth, and add a -p or -t at the end.

[ʔp] and [ʔt] Consonant Chart

German Phonetic Symbol	German Grapheme Symbol	German Keywords	Similar to English	Note
[ʔp]	/sp/	<i>Spiel</i> ("game")	-	- pronounced [ʔp] in initial position
[ʔt]	/st/	<i>Stadt</i> ("city")	-	- pronounced [ʔt] in initial position

II. The Affricate [pʔf]

One of the more noteworthy sound combinations is the affricate [pf]. [pf] consists of the consonant letters -p and -f. We pronounce a light [p] sound shortly before the [f]. Examples are *Pferd* ("horse"), *Pfeffer* ("pepper"), and *Pfennig* ("penny").

Remember how to build a [p] sound, where a puff goes along with it, and add a [f]. Then you have [pf] as in *Pferd*.

Another affricate combination sound is made of three consecutive consonants. The most graphic example is the word *Pflanze*, which in English means "plant." It starts with [pf], followed by the consonant -l.

If you are not able to pronounce the affricate [pfl] correctly, a simple [f] sound before [l] will do it: [**Flanze*], but try to build it with [pf].

* Refers to the pronunciation of a German word, not its actual spelling.

Advanced Consonant Articulation Chart

	Places of Articulation							
	Bilabial	Labio - Dental	Alveolar	Postal - Veolar	Palatal	Velar	Uvular	Glottal
Plosive	[p], [b]		[t], [d]			[k], [g]		
Fricative		[f], [v]	[s], [z]	[ʃ], [ʒ]			[ʁ], ("r")	[h]
Affricate		[pʔf]	[ts]	[tʃʃ], [dʒʒ]				
Approximant			[l]		[j]			
Trill/Vibrant			[r]					

Nasal	[m]		[n]			[ʔ]		
-------	-----	--	-----	--	--	-----	--	--

III. Other Grouped Consonants

German has more grouped consonants at its disposal. Two of them, we want to discuss in this guide, but there are more shown in the chart below. Those two are /qu/ and /th/.

1. **[qu]**: Similar to English, the letter -q is always followed by the vowel -u. The difference is that we pronounce the German /qu/ grapheme as if it were written /kw/: [kw] as in *Quark* ("curd") or *Quittung* ("receipt"). You can practice building [kw] by forming your lips as if you want to say the English word "cave." Say it a few times. Then leave out the -a vowel and say only -cv.
2. **[th]**: The German language doesn't use [th] as a sound, but a lot of foreign words have a /th/ grapheme in the syllable onset. While in English you pronounce /th/, in German /h/ is silent, and so we pronounce /th/ like the English name "Thomas." German examples are *Theater* ("theatre"), *Thema* ("topic"), and *Theologie* ("theology").

Other Grouped Consonants Chart

German Phonetic Symbol	German Grapheme Symbol	German Keywords	Similar to English	Note
[kw]	/qu/	<i>Quark</i> ("curd"), <i>Quittung</i> ("receipt")	-	- say "cave" a few times, then leave out the -a and say [cv]
[t]	/th/	<i>Theater</i> ("theater"), <i>Thema</i> ("topic"), <i>Theologie</i> ("theologie")	"Thomas"	- the -h is silent
[gn]	/gn/	<i>Gnade</i> ("mercy"), <i>Gnom</i> ("gnome")	-	- pronounce a light [g] sound before the -n
[kn]	/kn/	<i>Knall</i> ("bang," "crack"), <i>knapp</i>	-	- pronounce a light [k] sound before the -n

		("scarce")		
[tsw]	/zw/	Z wiebel ("onion"), z w anzig ("twenty")	cats + <u>v</u>	





Pronunciation S2

German Ich and Ach Sounds

4

Grammar Points

2

Grammar Points

The Focus of This Lesson Will Introduce the *-Ich* and *-Ach* Sounds and the Letter *-C* With Its Different Pronunciations

Introduction

Up until now, you have learned the basic German vowels and consonants, and also learned what diphthongs and grouped consonants are and how we pronounce them in German. This time, we will guide you through the immensely important *ich* and *ach* sounds, that are fundamental for understanding and pronouncing German correctly.

If you have ever spoken German or listened to a conversation between native German speakers, you may have noticed that Germans quite often use a sound that sounds like they are clearing their throats.

Imagine it's movie night on a Friday evening, and you and your German friends want to watch that nice action flick at nine PM, but you have chatted too long in the kitchen with them. Finally, someone checks the time. It's already eight PM. So, he/she might be very surprised and say something like *Ach je, es ist schon acht Uhr*, which in English means "Oh dear, it's already eight."

That 'throat-cleaning sound' appears twice in this sentence; in the particle *ach* ("oh") and the numeral *acht* ("eight").

This example leads us right into today's topic: *ich* and *ach* sounds. First, we will go over the basics of these two consonant sounds with more examples, and in the second part of this guide, we will give you some other miscellaneous pronunciation advices regarding the letter *-c* and its different pronunciation rules.

Ich [ç] and Ach [x] Sounds

Both sounds, the *ich* and the *ach* sound, are consonant sounds we express with the phonemes [ç] ("ich") and [x] ("ach"). In written German, they are represented by the consonant cluster /ch/. [ç] and [x] are closely related, but still are distinct sounds in German. They do not appear in Standard English. For that very reason, native English speakers usually have a hard time pronouncing them correctly.

Pronunciation

Hold your tongue and mouth in a position as if you want to build a [k] sound: [k] as in the English word "kite." But, try not to cut off the stream of breath as you do when building [k]. Instead, force it through the narrow opening between the tongue and the roof of the mouth. First, say [k] a few times, and then force your air over your tongue.

To build a palatal *ich* [ç] sound, force the stream of air through a flat, but wide opening between the tongue and the roof of the mouth.

Reference Example

1. *Ich* [ç] consonant sound:
Ich beichte in der Kirche.
"I confess in church."

To build the guttural *ach* [x] sound, pronounce it toward the back of the throat. We've introduced you to the [x] sound earlier in this lesson. It's the so-called 'throat cleaning sound.'

Pronunciation tip: Try to pronounce it like the [x] in the Scottish word "Loch Ness."*

Reference Example

1. [x] consonant sound:
Ach je, es ist schon acht Uhr.
"Oh dear, it is already eight o'clock."

* Loch Ness is a lake in Scotland, where according to legend, a lake monster (Nessie) lives and terrorizes people.

When to Use [ç] and [x]

We determine whether the /ch/ grapheme in a German word becomes a [ç] or [x] sound by the immediately preceding vowel. If /ch/ follows the back vowels -o and -u, as well as the vowel -a and diphthong -au, we pronounce it as [x].

Examples for the [x] sound are:

1. *Koch*
"cook" where [x] is preceded by vowel -o
2. *Buch*
"book" where [x] is preceded by vowel -u
3. *acht*
"eight" where [x] is preceded by vowel -a
4. *Rauch*
"smoke" where [x] is preceded by diphthong -au

The [ç] sound occurs after front vowels, -e, -i, -ä, -ö, and -ü, after diphthongs -ei and -eu, and the consonants -l, -n, and -r.

Examples for the [ç] sound are:

1. *schlecht*
"bad" where [ç] is preceded by the vowel -e
2. *ich*
"I" where [ç] is preceded by the vowel -i
3. *riechen*
"to smell" where [ç] is preceded by the long -i:; expressed by the letters -ie
4. *lächeln*
"to smile" where [ç] is preceded by the umlaut -ä
5. *möchte*
"to want" where [ç] is preceded by the umlaut -ö
6. *Bücher*
"books" where [ç] is preceded by the umlaut -ü
7. *Beichte*
"confession" where [ç] is preceded by the diphthong -ei
8. *leuchten*
"to glow" where [ç] is preceded by the diphthong -eu
9. *welche*
"what"/"which" where [ç] is preceded by the consonant -l
10. *München*
"Munich" where [ç] is preceded by the consonant -n
11. *Kirche*
"church" where [ç] follows the consonant -r

The German Suffix *-ig*

A lot of German adjectives end on the suffix *-ig*, made of the vowel *-i* and the consonant *-g*. However, in standard German, we always pronounce this suffix as *ich* [ç].

Example:

wichtig ("important")

We pronounce this adjective as *[wichtich], instead of [wichtig].

Other examples are:

1. *hastig* ("hurried")
2. *lustig* ("funny")
3. *richtig* ("right"/"proper")
4. *schmutzig* ("dirty")

* Refers to the pronunciation of a German word, not its actual spelling.

The German Suffix *-chen*

We always pronounce the German diminutive suffix *-chen* as [ç]. This rule also applies for words that follow back vowels – usually the indicator to pronounce /ch/ as [x]. An example for that is the German word *Frauchen* ("female dog master"). Even though /ch/ follows the diphthong /au/ (indicator for [x] sound), we pronounce it as [ç].

The diminutive suffix *-chen* also triggers umlauts:

1. *Katze* ("cat") – *Kätzchen* ("kitten")
-a vowel changes to -ä umlaut vowel
2. *Hund* ("dog") - *Hündchen* ("little dog")
-u vowel changes to -ü umlaut vowel



The Different Functions of *-chen*

You need to be careful if you read a word that ends with *-chen*. Not always is it a diminutive suffix.

The German verb *rauchen* ("to smoke") for example, ends with *-chen*, but here, we pronounce *-chen* as [x]. This is not an exception to the *-chen* suffix pronunciation rule because the *-chen* in *rauchen* is not a diminutive suffix, even though it looks like one. The same goes for *Kuchen* ("cake"), a noun that also ends with *-chen*, but where *-chen* is not a suffix. We pronounce the *-chen* at the end of this German word as [x].

A diminutive suffix adds to the whole word, like in our previous example:

Frau plus the suffix *-chen* results in *Frauchen*. Whereas the *-chen* in *rauchen* and *Kuchen* is part of the root word.

The basic rule is, if it's a diminutive suffix, we always pronounce it as [ç]. If it's part of the root word, the pronunciation of /ch/ depends on the preceding vowel.

[ç] and [x] Consonant Sound Chart

German Phonetic Symbol	German Grapheme Symbol	German Keywords	Similar to English	Note
[ç]	/ch/	<i>ich</i> ("I"), <i>Bücher</i> ("books"), <i>Kirche</i> ("church")	-	- pronounced as [ç] after vowels -e, -i, -ä, -ö, and -ü, diphthongs -ei and -eu, and consonants -l, -n, and -r
[x]	/ch/	<i>Krach</i> ("noise"), <i>Koch</i> ("cook"), <i>Buch</i> ("book")	-	- pronounced as [x] after -a, -o, and -u, and the diphthong -au

The Letter -c and Its Different Pronunciations

In this part of the lesson, we will look at the letter -c and the consonant cluster -ch with its different pronunciation rules. Even though -c is a letter of the German alphabet, it doesn't display a specific consonant sound on its own. We can pronounce the letter -c, expressed with the grapheme /c/, in a variety of ways.

-C in Initial Word Position

The letter -c can appear in the initial position in foreign words.

We pronounce -c in the initial position as the [ts] as in "cats" or "hats" if it comes before the vowels -ä, -e, or -i. It's a sharp affricate consonant sound. (For further information on affricates, please check your PDF guide for Pronunciation Lesson number two).

Examples are:

1. *Cäsar* ("Caesar")
2. *Celsius* ("Celsius")
3. *circa* ("approximately")

In other environments, if -c comes before the vowels -a and -o, or the diphthong -ou, we will pronounce it as the [k] as in "camping."

Examples are:

1. *Camping* ("camping")
2. *Computer* ("computer")
3. *Couch* ("couch")

Ch- in the Initial Word Position

In words of German origin, the letter -c always appears in combination either with the letter -h to build -ch, or with the letters -s and -h to build -sch. As you have seen above, the -ch combination is crucial for building the [ç] and [x] sounds in German. In contrast, we can pronounce German words of foreign

origin that start with -ch in a variety of possible ways:

1. [k] as in **Christ** ("Christ") or **Chaos** ("chaos")
2. [ʃ] as in **Chef** ("chief") or **charmant** ("charming")
3. [tʃ] as in **Check** ("check") or **Chip** ("chip")
4. [ç] as in **Chemie** ("chemistry") or **chinesisch** ("Chinese")
5. An [x] sound is never spoken in the initial word position

Pronunciation of the c/-ch- Sounds in Initial Word Position

German Phonetic Symbol	German Grapheme Symbol	German Keywords	Similar to English	Note
[ts]	/c/	Cäsar ("caesar"), Celsius ("celsius"), circa ("approximately")	"cats," "hats"	- pronounced as [ts] before -ä, -e, and -i - other grapheme symbol is /z/ as in Zoo ("zoo")
[k]	/c/	Camping ("camping"), Computer ("computer"), Couch ("couch")	"c <u>amp</u> ing," "c <u>ab</u> "	- pronounced as [k] before -a, -o, and -ou

German Phonetic Symbol	German Grapheme Symbol	German Keywords	Similar to English
[k]	/ch/	Christ ("Christ"), Chaos ("chaos")	"c <u>amp</u> ing" "c <u>ab</u> "
[ʃ]	/ch/	Chef ("chief"), Chance	"s <u>h</u> ow" "s <u>h</u> adow"

		("chance")	
[tʰ] (<i>tsch</i>)	/ch/	Check ("check"), Chip ("chip")	" <u>ch</u> ance"
[ç]	/ch/	Chemie ("chemistry"), chinesisch ("Chinese")	





Pronunciation S2

German Stress, Rhythm, and Intonation

5

Grammar Points

2

Grammar Points

The Focus of This Lesson Will Introduce You to German Stress, Intonation, and Rhythm

Introduction

Speaking German involves adding intonation, stress, and rhythm to speech to give it some life. Listening to someone speaking in the same rhythm and without any intonation rising or falling feels boring and lifeless. Without rhythm and intonation, language does not express emotions or intentions. Both, the English and German languages possess a rhythm and stress, but each language applies them differently.

Stress

"Stress" is a linguistic term and refers to the "emphasis" that may be given to certain syllables in a word. In any syllable, vowels can be stressed, consonants not. Stress is fundamental to the pronunciation of many languages, including English and German.

Stress in English

The English language has a lot of stress in it. Try saying the words "important" and "interesting" aloud. When you say these words aloud, you're putting emphasis (or stress) on a certain syllable. In "**important**," the stress is on the "-port" syllable. In "**i**nteresting," the stress is on the "int-" syllable. If you haven't studied phonetics before, it's probably something that you've never noticed before! It just comes naturally. Because in English, we put emphasis on certain syllables, English is known as a stress language.

Another kind of stress is "word accent." Word accent is widely used in English, and is realized on focused or accented words in a sentence.

Example:

Phone conversation:

A: "Will you take the early train tomorrow?"

B: "No, I'll take the *evening* train tomorrow."

In this conversation, the acoustic differences between the syllables of "tomorrow" are small compared to the differences between the syllables of "evening." That is because "evening" is the emphasized word. In those words, stressed syllables are louder and stronger than in regular words. In our example, we heavily emphasize the first -e vowel sound (B says: "evening").

To sum it up, there are two kinds of stress in English: Putting emphasis on certain syllables in words, and word accent.

Stress in German

Like English, the German language also uses the concept of stressing syllables and knows both kinds of stress. But there is one major difference to stress in English. While in English you have to learn which syllable or syllables of a word are stressed (as stress is mostly unpredictable), stress in German usually falls on the first syllable of the root word. "Stress on the first syllable of a root word" is called "root word accent" or "root word stress." We hold the first syllable of a root for a longer length of time than the others and we give it more stress. Root word stress occurs in most words of German origin. Stress applies to all kinds of words: nouns, verbs, adjectives, and all other parts of speech.

Examples for Root Word Stress:

<i>German Example</i>	Syllabic and Stressed	Word Class	"English"
<i>Arbeiter</i>	Ar -bei-ter	noun	"worker"
<i>Hausaufgabe</i>	Haus -auf-ga-be	noun	"homework"
<i>kaufen</i>	kau -fen	verb	"to buy"
<i>trinken</i>	trin -ken	verb	"to drink"
<i>ordentlich</i>	or -dent-lich	adjective	"tidy"/"orderly"
<i>fünfzehn</i>	fünf -zehn	numeral	"fifteen"

The use of root word stress in German becomes even more obvious if we take a look at the root word *lehr*- ("teach").

For Example:

1. *lehren*
"to teach"
2. *Lehrer*
"male teacher"
3. *Lehrerin*
"female teacher"
4. *belehren*
"to inform"

We place stress (emphasis) on the first syllable of the root word, as seen in the first three examples. But this does not necessarily mean that we stress the first syllable of any German word. In our last example, *belehren* ("to inform"), we stress the second syllable. That is because we add the prefix *be-* to the root word. So, we stress the second syllable of the word *belehren*, and the first of the root word, which is *lehren*.

To sum it up: If we add prefixes and/or suffixes to the root word, they have an impact on stress, too.

Exceptions

There are some common exceptions to the German root word stress.

I. Foreign Words and Loanwords in German

The pronunciation of loanwords often follows the rules of the language we borrow them from.

Examples:

1. Especially proper names keep their original stress. We will still call a French guy named *Gustáv* [*Gus-táv*], not [*Gus-tav*].
2. We stress the word "Computer" in German similar to English on the **second** syllable: *Com-pu-ter*, not on the **first** syllable, *Com-pu-ter*.

II. Compound Adverbs

We stress compound adverbs with one of the following prefixes: *her-*, *hin-*, *da-*, and *wo-*, on their second syllable.

Examples:

1. *-her-auf*
"up here"
2. *-da-hin*
"there"/"to that place"
3. *-wo-hin*
"where... to"

III. Separable and Inseparable Prefixes

German also distinguishes stress between separable prefixes (with stress on the prefix) and inseparable prefixes (with stress on the root word) in verbs and words derived from such verbs.

A. Separable Prefixes:

Words beginning with *ab-*, *auf-*, *em-*, and *vor-* have separable prefixes and we stress them on their first syllable.

Example Chart

<i>German Example</i>	<i>Syllabic and Stressed</i>	<i>"English"</i>
<i>abbauen</i>	<i>ab-bau-en</i>	"to mine"/"to dismantle"
<i>Abdruck</i>	<i>Ab-druck</i>	"print"/"mark"
<i>aufnehmen</i>	<i>auf-neh-men</i>	"to take up"/"to record"
<i>Aufgabe</i>	<i>Auf-ga-be</i>	"task"
<i>Embargo</i>	<i>Em-bar-go</i>	"embargo"
<i>vorausgehen</i>	<i>vor-aus-ge-hen</i>	"to precede"
<i>Vorabend</i>	<i>Vor-a-bend</i>	"eve"

B. Inseparable Prefixes

Words beginning with *be-*, *ge-*, *er-*, *ver-*, *zer-*, *ent-*, and *emp-* have inseparable prefixes and receive stress on the second syllable.

Example Chart

<i>German Example</i>	<i>Syllabic and Stressed</i>	<i>"English"</i>
<i>beginnen</i>	<i>be-gin-nen</i>	"to start"
<i>gewinnen</i>	<i>ge-win-nen</i>	"to win"
<i>erbitten</i>	<i>er-bit-ten</i>	"to request"
<i>vertrauen</i>	<i>ver-trau-en</i>	"to trust"
<i>zerbrechen</i>	<i>zer-bre-chen</i>	"to break"
<i>entbinden</i>	<i>ent-bin-den</i>	"to give birth"
<i>empfangen</i>	<i>emp-fan-gen</i>	"to receive"

Note

Rarely, two homographs (words that are written the same, but with a different meaning) with such prefixes are formed. Consider the word *umfahren*. As *um-fahren* (separable prefix), it means "to drive over/to collide with (an object on the street)," and receives stress on the first syllable. On the other hand, *umfahren* (inseparable prefix) is stressed on the second syllable, *um-fah-ren*. This word means "to drive around (an obstacle on the street)."

IV. Suffixes with Predictable Stress Patterns

One major example are verbs that end on the suffix *-ieren*. They receive stress on their penultimate syllable.

Examples:

1. *-studieren* ("to study"); a verb made of three syllables: *stu-die-ren*. Stressed on the middle syllable *-die*, which is the penultimate syllable.
2. *-balancieren* ("to balance"); a verb made of four syllables: *ba-lan-cie-ren*. Stressed on the third syllable, which is the penultimate syllable.

Other suffixes are listed in the chart below.

Suffixes with Predictable Stress Patterns

Suffix	German Example	Syllabic and Stressed	"English"	Stress
-erei	<i>Bücherei</i>	<i>Bü-che-rei</i>	"library"	last syllable
-ie	<i>Chemie</i>	<i>Che-mie</i>	"chemistry"	last syllable
-ik	<i>Politik</i>	<i>Po-li-tik</i>	"politics"	last syllable
-tät	<i>Aktivität</i>	<i>Ak-ti-vi-tät</i>	"activity"	last syllable
-eum	<i>Museum</i>	<i>Mu-se-um</i>	"museum"	next to last syllable
-ieren	<i>studieren</i>	<i>stu-die-ren</i>	"to study"	next to last syllable

Learning Tip

These exceptions are quite something to memorize. To get good at this, practice copying native speakers! Stressing syllables the way we do in English when speaking German will sound unnatural, so be careful! Keep in mind that listening and repeating is really the key to improving your pronunciation. Listen to and copy native speakers as much as you can.

Rhythm**I. Rhythm & Timing**

When we speak, we don't say everything in the same rhythm and timing, because that would sound unnatural. The general idea of rhythm and timing is that a language "divides time rhythmically into equal portions." This is called "isochrony." There are three types of isochrony: stress-timed, syllable-timed, and mora-timed.

The German language, like many other languages including English, Dutch, and Russian, is a stress-timed language. This means that syllables may last different amounts of time, but the temporal duration between consecutive stressed syllables is equal or close to equal. Stressed syllables appear at a constant rate, but we shorten non-stressed syllables to accommodate this.

A stress-timed rhythm like in German is sometimes called "Morse-code rhythm." This comparison works because a Morse-code is made of long and short signals. In a metaphorical sense, this refers to stressed (long) and non-stressed (short) syllables. Stressed syllables are not only spoken louder and more powerful than non-stressed syllables, but also longer. So, if a non-stressed syllable follows a

stressed syllable, we will pronounce the non-stressed one shorter and with a lower voice. And for that reason, stress-timing usually correlates with vowel reduction processes.

The main difference between stress-timed and syllable- or mora-timed languages is that in languages like Spanish (syllable-timed) or Japanese (mora timed), syllables or *morae* are spoken at a constant rate regardless of stress.

II. Stress and Vowel Reduction

In many languages, such as English, German, and Russian, vowel reduction may occur when a vowel changes from a stressed to an unstressed position. Especially in German, many unstressed vowels reduce to "schwa-like" vowel sounds. But this highly depends on the specific German dialect spoken. Vowel reduction occurs in the unstressed position, for example, in the last syllable of a word. There, the vowel is not emphasized and changes its sound.

Example:

[e] vowel sound in the last syllable of words

1. correct pronunciation: *Butter* ("butter"); syllabic: *But-ter*
2. reduction of the last syllable (very common): **Buttä*; syllabic: *But-tä*.

This [ä] vowel sound at the end of the word instead of /er/, we call it the "schwa" vowel sound.

Other examples for vowel reduction:

1. *Bäcker* ("baker")
becomes
**[Bäckä]*
2. *Hausmeister* ("caretaker")
becomes
**[Hausmeistä]*
3. *Maler* ("painter")
becomes
**[Malä]*

* Refers to the pronunciation of a German word, not its actual spelling.

III. Vowel Omission

Another phenomenon that commonly occurs in German is vowel omission. In certain positions, we can omit vowels in unstressed syllables. Most common is the omission of the [e] vowel sound in a verb's last unstressed syllable. Let's say two people need to go to an appointment together, one of them would say *Wir woll'n geh'n* instead of *Wir wollen gehen*. ("We want to leave.") We omit the [e] in the last unstressed syllable of both verbs, and so we have *woll'n* instead of *wollen*, and *geh'n* instead of *gehen*.

Intonation

All right. Let's switch over to our last topic – "intonation." The German language knows three different tones of voice. Those are: falling, rising, and floating intonation.

I. Falling Intonation

Falling intonation marks the conclusion of declarative and imperative sentences.

Examples:

1. *Ich gehe arbeiten.*
"I go to work." (declarative sentence)

Over the last two syllables of *arbeiten*, the tone of voice is falling.

1. *Mach das Fenster zu!*
"Shut the window!" (imperative sentence)

Over the last two syllables of the sentence (*-ster + -zu*), the tone of voice is falling.

We also use falling intonation at the end of interrogative sentences with "open questions."

Examples:

1. *Wie spät ist es?*
"What time is it?"
2. *Wie geht es dir?*
"How are you?"

II. Rising Intonation

Rising intonation is typical for "yes/no questions." You can hear a raised pitch near the end of the sentence.

Examples:

1. *Hast du Hunger?*
"Are you hungry?"
2. *Magst du Fußball?*
"Do you like soccer?"

III. Floating Intonation

We use floating intonation to mark breaks between main clauses and dependent clauses.

Example:

1. *Marie macht das Fenster zu, denn ihr ist kalt.*
"Marie closes the window because she feels cold."

The main clause, *Marie macht das **Fenster zu***, ends on floating intonation to indicate that it's continuing with a dependent clause.

To sum it up: The tone of the voice falls or rises at the end of a sentence depending on the kind of sentence (declarative, imperative, or interrogative). Falling or rising intonation takes place beginning

with the last stressed syllable of the sentence.

If the intonation is falling, we pronounce the last stressed syllable a little bit higher so that we can pronounce the following unstressed syllable(s) of the sentence with a falling tone of voice.

Example:

1. *Ich gehe **arbeiten**.*
"I go to work."

The last stressed syllable in this sentence is the *ar-* in ***arbeiten*** ("to work"), and we pronounce it higher so that we can pronounce the following two syllables with a falling tone of voice. ***ar**-bei-ten.*

If the intonation is rising, we pronounce the last stressed syllable a little bit lower so that we can pronounce the following unstressed syllable(s) of the sentence with a rising tone of voice.

Example (yes/no question):

1. *Hast du **Hunger**?*
"Are you hungry?"

The last stressed syllable is the *Hun-* in ***Hunger*** ("hungry"). We pronounce it lower so that we can pronounce the following syllable with a rising tone of voice to build the question. ***Hun**-ger.*



GermanPod101.com

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know



innovativeLANGUAGE.COM

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #1 What's your name in German?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar

1

GERMAN

1. Q: Wie ist dein Name?
2. A: Mein Name ist Kai.
3. A: Mein Name ist Tim.
4. A: Mein Name ist Elisa.
5. A: Mein Name ist Sandra.

ENGLISH

1. Q: What's your name?
2. A: My name is Kai.
3. A: My name is Tim.
4. A: My name is Elisa.
5. A: My name is Sandra.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
wie	how	pronoun	when not used as a question word, "wie" has the meaning of "as"

ist	is	conjugated verb	sein - er ist, er war, ist gewesen; ich bin, ich war, ich bin gewesen
dein	your (informal)	possessive pronoun	
Name	name	noun; masculine, der	plural: Namen
mein	my	possessive pronoun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Wie ist dein Name? What's your name?</p>	<p>Wie heißt du? How are you called?</p>
<p>Sie ist süß. She is cute.</p>	<p>Das ist Lisa. That's Lisa.</p>
<p>Dein Haus ist sehr groß. Your house is very big.</p>	<p>Kommst du allein oder kommt dein Mann auch? Are you coming alone or is your husband coming, too?</p>
<p>Mein Name ist Lisa. My name is Lisa.</p>	<p>Mein Name ist Tim. My name is Tim.</p>
<p>Mein Name ist Lisa. My name is Lisa.</p>	

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say "What's your name?" in German. The question is broken down into {4} words:

	German	English	Class
Word 1	<i>wie</i>	how	interrogative
Word 2	<i>ist</i>	is	verb
Word 3	<i>dein</i>	your (Masculine)	pronoun
Word 4	<i>Name</i>	name (Masculine)	noun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #2 Where are you from in German?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

2

GERMAN

1. Q: Woher kommst du?
2. A: Ich komme aus den USA.
3. A: Ich komme aus Deutschland.
4. A: Ich komme aus Frankreich.
5. A: Ich komme aus Spanien.

ENGLISH

1. Q: Where are you from?
2. A: I'm from the U.S.
3. A: I'm from Germany
4. A: I'm from France
5. A: I'm from Spain

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
woher	from where	question word	
ich	I	personal pronoun	
kommen	to come	verb	weak verb
du	you (informally)	personal pronoun	

aus	from	preposition	
Deutschland	Germany	proper noun	
den	the	article	Used with accusative or dative.
USA	U.S.A.	proper name; die	
Frankreich	France	noun	
Spanien	Spain	noun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Woher kommst du? Where are you from?</p>	<p>Woher kommt Robert? Where does Robert come from?</p>
<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun! I was so busy last week!</p>	<p>Ich bin Lisa. I am Lisa.</p>
<p>Lisa kommt heute nicht. Lisa isn't coming today.</p>	<p>Du bist gut. You are good.</p>
<p>Bist du dir sicher? Are you sure?</p>	<p>Kommst du aus Berlin oder von außerhalb? Do you come from Berlin or from elsewhere?</p>
<p>Ich bin aus Deutschland. I am from Germany.</p>	<p>Deutschland ist in Europa. Germany is in Europe.</p>
<p>Ich komme aus den USA. I'm from the U.S.</p>	<p>Vicard kommt aus Frankreich. Vicard comes from France.</p>

Ich komme aus Spanien.

I'm from Spain.

Also, wie findest du Spanien, so ganz allgemein?

So how do you like Spain, in general?

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say Where are you from? in German.

The question is broken down into {3} words:

	<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Class</i>
Word 1	<i>woher</i>	where, from	interrogative
Word 2	<i>kommst</i>	come (2nd person)	verb
Word 3	<i>du</i>	you	pronoun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #3 Where do you live? in German

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

3

GERMAN

1. Q: Wo wohnst du?
2. A: Ich wohne in New York.
3. A: Ich wohne in Frankfurt.
4. A: Ich wohne in Hamburg.
5. A: Ich wohne in München.

ENGLISH

1. Q: Where do you live?
2. A: I live in New York.
3. A: I live in Frankfurt.
4. A: I live in Hamburg.
5. A: I live in Munich.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
New York	New York	noun	Used without article.
Frankfurt	Frankfurt	proper name	Used without article.
Hamburg	Hamburg	proper name	Used without article.
München	Munich	proper name	Used without article.

wo	where	adverb	
wohnen	to live, to inhabit	verb	
du	you (informally)	personal pronoun	
ich	I	personal pronoun	
in	in	preposition	prepositions are rarely the same across languages, so this can be used in situations where English would not use "in"

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Ich wohne in New York.</p> <p>I live in New York.</p>	<p>Ich wohne in Frankfurt.</p> <p>I live in Frankfurt.</p>
<p>Hamburg ist berühmt für seinen Hafen, welcher es in der Vergangenheit zu einer reichen Hansestadt gemacht hat.</p> <p>Hamburg is known for its harbor, which made it a rich Hanseatic city in the past.</p>	<p>Ich wohne in Hamburg.</p> <p>I live in Hamburg.</p>
<p>Am Samstag komme ich nach Hamburg.</p> <p>On Saturday I am coming to Hamburg.</p>	<p>München ist die Gastgeberstadt des Oktoberfests und berühmt für seine Biergärten.</p> <p>Munich is the host city of Oktoberfest, and is known for its beer gardens.</p>
<p>Ich wohne in München.</p> <p>I live in Munich.</p>	<p>Geh zum Flughafen und flieg nach München.</p> <p>Go to the airport and fly to Munich.</p>

<p>Entschuldigen Sie bitte, wo finde ich das Deutsche Museum?</p> <p>Excuse me please, where can I find the German Museum?</p>	<p>Wo wohnst du jetzt?</p> <p>Where do you live now?</p>
<p>Ich wohne nicht in Berlin.</p> <p>I don't live in Berlin.</p>	<p>Du bist gut.</p> <p>You are good.</p>
<p>Bist du dir sicher?</p> <p>Are you sure?</p>	<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun!</p> <p>I was so busy last week!</p>
<p>Ich bin Lisa.</p> <p>I am Lisa.</p>	<p>Ist Bier teuer in Deutschland?</p> <p>Is beer expensive in Germany?</p>

Der Schlüssel ist in meiner Hosentasche.

The key is in my pants pocket.

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say *Where do you live?* in German.

The question is broken down into {3} words:

	<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Class</i>
Word 1	<i>wo</i>	where	interrogative
Word 2	<i>wohnst</i>	live (2nd person)	verb
Word 3	<i>du</i>	you	pronoun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #4 What do you do in German?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

4

GERMAN

1. Q: Was machst du beruflich?
2. A: Ich bin Lehrer.
3. A: Ich bin Ingenieur.
4. A: Ich bin Übersetzer.
5. A: Ich bin Bankangestellter.

ENGLISH

1. Q: What do you do?
2. A: I'm a teacher.
3. A: I'm a engineer.
4. A: I'm a translator.
5. A: I'm a bank clerk.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
Bankangestellter	bank clerk	noun; masculine, der	
was	what	pronoun	
machen	to make, to do	verb	weak verb

sein	to be	verb	ich bin, du bist, er ist, wir sind, ihr seid, sie sind
beruflich	by profession; professionally		
Lehrer	teacher	noun; masculine, der	plural is the same; feminine: Lehrerin
Ingenieur	engineer	noun	plural: Ingenieure; feminine: Ingenieurin
Übersetzer	translator	noun; masculine, der	plural is the same; feminine: Übersetzerin

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Ich bin Bankangestellter. I'm a bank clerk.</p>	<p>Was ist das? What is this?</p>
<p>Ich mache Kaffee. I am making coffee.</p>	<p>Das kann doch nicht wahr sein! That can't be true!</p>
<p>Ich bin Student. I am a student.</p>	<p>Was machst du beruflich? What do you do?</p>
<p>Seine berufliche Zukunft ist interessant. His professional future is interesting.</p>	<p>Ich arbeite als Lehrer. I work as a teacher.</p>
<p>Der Lehrer schrieb die Lösung an die Tafel. The teacher wrote the solution on the blackboard.</p>	<p>Ich bin Ingenieur. I'm a engineer.</p>

Ich bin Übersetzer.

I'm a translator.

Ich arbeite als Übersetzer bei einer großen Firma.

I work as a translator for a big company.

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say What do you do? in German.

The question is broken down into {4} words:

	<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Class</i>
Word 1	<i>was</i>	what	interrogative
Word 2	<i>machst</i>	to do	verb
Word 3	<i>du</i>	you	pronoun
Word 4	<i>beruflich</i>	for work	adverb

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #5 Do you speak German?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

5

GERMAN

1. Q: Sprichst du Deutsch?
2. A: Ja, ein wenig.
3. A: Ja, fließend.
4. A: Ja, etwas.
5. A: Ja, aber nur ein bisschen.

ENGLISH

1. Q: Do you speak German?
2. A: Yes, I speak a little.
3. A: Yes, I speak fluently.
4. A: Yes, I speak some.
5. A: Yes, I speak but only a little.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
aber nur ein bisschen	but only a little	expression	
sprechen	to speak	verb	er spricht, er sprach, er hat gesprochen
Deutsch	German language	noun, neuter, das	

ja	yes	adverb	
ein	a, an	article	changes according to gender, number and case of following noun
wenig	little	adverb	
fließend	flowing, fluent, fluently	adverb	
etwas	something	adverb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Ich spreche nur ein bisschen Deutsch.</p> <p>I only speak a little German.</p>	<p>Entschuldigung, ich spreche kein Deutsch.</p> <p>Sorry, I don't speak German.</p>
<p>Ich spreche Deutsch.</p> <p>I speak German.</p>	<p>Deutsch ist eine interessante Sprache.</p> <p>German is an interesting language.</p>
<p>Na schön, du hast ja Recht.</p> <p>Fair enough, you're right. (In the sense of "I'm giving in.")</p>	<p>Ja, das stimmt.</p> <p>Yes, that's right.</p>
<p>Heute ist ein guter Tag.</p> <p>Today is a good day.</p>	<p>Das war nur ein Witz.</p> <p>That was just a joke.</p>
<p>In Deutschland essen wenige Menschen ihre Pfannkuchen mit Ahornsirup.</p> <p>In Germany, few people eat their pancakes with maple syrup.</p>	<p>Sprechen Sie Deutsch? - Ein wenig, nicht viel.</p> <p>Do you speak German? - A little, not much.</p>

<p>Ja, fließend.</p> <p>Yes, I speak fluently.</p>	<p>Welche Sprachen sprechen Sie fließend?</p> <p>In which languages are you a fluent speaker?</p>
<p>Ja, etwas.</p> <p>Yes, I speak some.</p>	<p>Ich will etwas trinken.</p> <p>I want to drink something.</p>

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say Do you speak German? in German.

The question is broken down into {3} words:

	<i>German</i>	English	Class
Word 1	<i>sprichst</i>	speak	verb
Word 2	<i>du</i>	you	pronoun
Word 3	<i>Deutsch</i>	German	noun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #6

How long have you been studying German?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

6

GERMAN

1. Q: Wie lange hast du Deutsch gelernt?
2. A: Für einen Monat.
3. A: Für zwei Wochen.
4. A: Für drei Monate.
5. A: Für sechs Monate.

ENGLISH

1. Q: How long have you been studying German?
2. A: For one month.
3. A: For two weeks.
4. A: For three months.
5. A: For six months.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
sechs Monate	6 months		
drei Monate	3 months		
zwei Wochen	2 weeks		

lange	long; a long time	adverb	
wie	how	pronoun	
haben	to have	verb	
Deutsch	German language	noun, neuter, das	neuter
gelernt	learned	conjugated verb	
Monat	month	noun; masculine, der	
einen	one		
für	for	preposition	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Für sechs Monate. For 6 months.</p>	<p>Ich war drei Monate in Australien. I was in Australia for three months.</p>
<p>Für zwei Wochen. For 2 weeks.</p>	<p>Musstest du lange warten? Did you have to wait a long time?</p>
<p>Wie teuer sind die Äpfel? How much are the apples?</p>	<p>Wie geht es Ihnen heute? How are you today?</p>
<p>Du hast eine große Klappe. You have a big mouth.</p>	<p>Haben Sie Zeit? Do you have time?</p>
<p>Deutsch ist eine interessante Sprache. German is an interesting language.</p>	<p>Wie lange hast du Deutsch gelernt? How long have you been studying German?</p>
<p>Seit einen Monat For one month.</p>	<p>Ich war drei Monate in Australien. I was in Australia for three months.</p>

Ich möchte einen Kaffee.

I would like a coffee.

Ist das Paket für mich?

Is that package for me?

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say How long have you been studying German? in German.

The question is broken down into {6} words:

	<i>German</i>	English	Class
Word 1	<i>wie</i>	how	interrogative
Word 2	<i>lange</i>	long	adjective
Word 3	<i>hast</i>	have	verb
Word 4	<i>du</i>	you	pronoun
Word 5	<i>Deutsch</i>	German	noun
Word 6	<i>gelernt</i>	learned	verb

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #7 Where did you learn German?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

7

GERMAN

1. Q: Wo hast du Deutsch gelernt?
2. A: Ich habe es in der Schule gelernt.
3. A: Ich habe es in der Universität gelernt.
4. A: Ich habe es in der Sprachschule gelernt.
5. A: Ich habe es zuhause gelernt.

ENGLISH

1. Q: Where did you learn German?
2. A: I learned it in school.
3. A: I learned it at university.
4. A: I learned it in language school.
5. A: I learned it at home.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
haben	to have	verb	irregular; ich habe, du hast, er hat, wir haben, ihr habt, sie haben
wo	where	adverb	

gelernt	learned	conjugated verb	lernen - er lernt, er lernte, er hat gelernt
es	it	personal pronoun	
in	in	preposition	prepositions are rarely the same across languages, so this can be used in situations where English would not use "in"
Universität	university	noun	plural: Universitäten
Schule	school	noun	plural: Schulen
der / die / das	the (masculine / feminine / neuter)	article	changes according to the gender of the following noun and according to singular/plural and case
Sprachschule	language school	noun; feminine, die	plural: Sprachschulen
Zuhause, zu Hause	home, at home		

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Du hast eine große Klappe.</p> <p>You have a big mouth.</p>	<p>Haben Sie Zeit?</p> <p>Do you have time?</p>
<p>Entschuldigen Sie bitte, wo finde ich das Deutsche Museum?</p> <p>Excuse me please, where can I find the German Museum?</p>	<p>Wo wohnst du jetzt?</p> <p>Where do you live now?</p>
<p>Wie lange hast du Deutsch gelernt?</p> <p>How long have you been studying German?</p>	<p>Es ist jetzt halb zehn.</p> <p>It is now half past nine. (half ten)</p>

Es ist 11 Uhr. It's 11:00.	Ist Bier teuer in Deutschland? Is beer expensive in Germany?
Der Schlüssel ist in meiner Hosentasche. The key is in my pants pocket.	Ich habe es in der Universität gelernt. I learned it at university.
Juchhu, Schule ist aus! Yay, school is over!	Danke für das Geschenk. Thanks for the present.
Die Sonne scheint heute. The sun is shining today.	Der Mann ist sehr alt. The man is very old.
Ich habe es in der Sprachschule gelernt. I learned it in language school.	Kennst du eine gute Sprachschule in München? Do you know a good language school in Munich?
Bist du zuhause? Are you home?	

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say *Where did you learn German?* in German. The question is broken down into {5} words:

	<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Class</i>
Word 1	<i>wo</i>	where	interrogative
Word 2	<i>hast</i>	have	verb
Word 3	<i>du</i>	you	pronoun
Word 4	<i>Deutsch</i>	German	noun

Word 5

gelernt

learned

verb

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #8 Can you eat German food?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

8

GERMAN

1. Q: Kannst du deutsches Essen essen?
2. A: Ja, es ist lecker.
3. A: Ja, es ist gut.
4. A: Ja, es ist gesund.
5. A: Ja, es ist reichhaltig.

ENGLISH

1. Q: Can you eat German food?
2. A: Yes, it's delicious.
3. A: Yes, it's good.
4. A: Yes, it's healthy.
5. A: Yes, it's rich.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
reichhaltig	rich	adjective	rich as in "contains a lot of"
gesund	healthy	adjective	
du	you (informal)	personal pronoun	

können	can, to be able to, to be allowed to	verb	irregular; ich kann, du kannst, er kann, wir können, ihr könnt, sie können
deutsches	German	conjugated adjective	for neuter nouns
Essen	food	noun; neuter, das	no plural
essen	to eat	verb	er isst, er aß, er hat gegessen
sein	to be	verb	ich bin, du bist, er ist, wir sind, ihr seid, sie sind
ja	yes	adverb	
lecker	delicious	adjective	
gut	good	adjective	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Ja, es ist reichhaltig.</p> <p>Yes, it's rich.</p>	<p>Grüner Salat ist sehr gesund.</p> <p>Green salad is very healthy.</p>
<p>Du bist gut.</p> <p>You are good.</p>	<p>Bist du dir sicher?</p> <p>Are you sure?</p>
<p>Kannst du deutsches Essen essen?</p> <p>Can you eat German food?</p>	<p>Ich kann nicht gut singen.</p> <p>I can't sing well.</p>
<p>Die Frau hat ein Essen zubereitet.</p> <p>The woman prepared a meal.</p>	<p>Das ist ein wirklich gutes Essen.</p> <p>That really is a good meal.</p>

<p>Ich esse nur Gemüse.</p> <p>I only eat vegetables.</p>	<p>Die Giraffen essen Blätter von einem Baum im Zoo.</p> <p>The giraffes are eating leaves from a tree in a zoo.</p>
<p>Ich bin aus Deutschland.</p> <p>I am from Germany.</p>	<p>Es ist eine Kamera.</p> <p>It's a camera.</p>
<p>Na schön, du hast ja Recht.</p> <p>Fair enough, you're right. (In the sense of "I'm giving in.")</p>	<p>Ja, das stimmt.</p> <p>Yes, that's right.</p>
<p>Ja, es ist lecker.</p> <p>Yes, it's delicious.</p>	<p>Die Frau genießt eine leckere Pizza.</p> <p>The woman is enjoying delicious pizza.</p>

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say Can you eat German food? in German. The question is broken down into {5} words:

	<i>German</i>	English	Class
Word 1	<i>kannst</i>	can	verb
Word 2	<i>du</i>	you	pronoun
Word 3	<i>deutsches</i>	German	adjective
Word 4	<i>Essen</i>	food	noun
Word 5	<i>essen</i>	eat	verb

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #9 Do you like German food?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

9

GERMAN

1. Q: Magst du deutsches Essen?
2. A: Ja, ich mag besonders Würste.
3. A: Ja, ich mag besonders Apfelkuchen.
4. A: Ja, ich mag besonders Käse.
5. A: Ja, ich mag besonders Schweinebraten.

ENGLISH

1. Q: Do you like German food?
2. A: Yes, I especially like sausages.
3. A: Yes, I especially like apple pie.
4. A: Yes, I especially like cheese.
5. A: Yes, I especially like roast pork.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
Schweinebraten	roast pork	noun; masculine, der	plural is the same
du	you (informally)	personal pronoun	

mögen	to like	verb	ich mag, du magst, er mag, wir mögen, ihr mögt, sie mögen. Past tense: er mochte.
deutsches	German	conjugated adjective	for neuter nouns
Essen	food	noun; neuter, das	no plural
ja	yes	adverb	
Würste	sausages	noun; plural, die	singular: Wurst; feminine, die
ich	I	personal pronoun	
besonders	especially		
Apfelkuchen	apple pie	noun; masculine, der	plural is the same
Käse	cheese	noun; masculine, der	plural is the same

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Ja, ich mag besonders Schweinebraten.</p> <p>Yes, I especially like roast pork.</p>	<p>Du bist gut.</p> <p>You are good.</p>
<p>Bist du dir sicher?</p> <p>Are you sure?</p>	<p>Ich mag dieses Lied.</p> <p>I like this song.</p>
<p>Er mag Rosenkohl nicht, aber er isst ihn trotzdem.</p> <p>He doesn't like Brussels sprouts, but he eats it anyway.</p>	<p>Schmeckt dir das Essen nicht?</p> <p>Don't you like the taste of the food?</p>
<p>Die Ameisen tragen Essen.</p> <p>The ants are carrying food.</p>	<p>Na schön, du hast ja Recht.</p> <p>Fair enough, you're right. (In the sense of "I'm giving in.")</p>

<p>Ja, das stimmt.</p> <p>Yes, that's right.</p>	<p>Ja, ich mag besonders Würste.</p> <p>Yes, I especially like sausages.</p>
<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun!</p> <p>I was so busy last week!</p>	<p>Ich bin Lisa.</p> <p>I am Lisa.</p>
<p>Ja, ich mag besonders Apfelkuchen.</p> <p>Yes, I especially like apple pie.</p>	<p>Meine Mutter macht unglaublich leckere Apfelkuchen.</p> <p>My mother makes incredibly delicious apple pies.</p>
<p>Ich hätte gern ein Butterbrot mit Käse.</p> <p>I would like a cheese sandwich.</p>	<p>Schweizer Käse ist sehr berühmt.</p> <p>Swiss cheese is very famous.</p>

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say Do you like German food? in German.
The question is broken down into {4} words:

	<i>German</i>	English	Class
Word 1	<i>magst</i>	like	verb
Word 2	<i>du</i>	you	pronoun
Word 3	<i>deutsches</i>	German	adjective
Word 4	<i>Essen</i>	food	noun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #10 How is the German food?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

10

GERMAN

1. Q: Wie ist es?
2. A: Es ist lecker.
3. A: Es ist gut.
4. A: Es ist herzhaft.
5. A: Es ist salzig.

ENGLISH

1. Q: How is it? (food)
2. A: It's delicious.
3. A: It's good.
4. A: It's hearty.
5. A: It's salty.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
sein	to be	verb	ich bin, du bist, er ist, wir sind, ihr seid, sie sind

wie	how	pronoun	when not used as a question word, "wie" has the meaning of "as"
es	it	personal pronoun	
lecker	delicious	adjective	
gut	good	adjective	
salzig	salty	adjective	
herzhaft	hearty	adjective	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Ich bin aus Deutschland. I am from Germany.</p>	<p>Es ist eine Kamera. It's a camera.</p>
<p>Wie teuer sind die Äpfel? How much are the apples?</p>	<p>Wie geht es Ihnen heute? How are you today?</p>
<p>Es ist jetzt halb zehn. It is now half past nine. (half ten)</p>	<p>Es ist 11 Uhr. It's 11:00.</p>
<p>Ja, es ist lecker. Yes, it's delicious.</p>	<p>Die Frau genießt eine leckere Pizza. The woman is enjoying delicious pizza.</p>
<p>Es ist salzig. It's salty.</p>	<p>Die Kartoffeln sind zu salzig, und das Fleisch ist zu scharf. The potatoes are too salty and the meat is too spicy.</p>

Es ist herzhaft.

It's hearty.

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say How is it? (food) in German.

The question is broken down into {3} words:

	<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Class</i>
Word 1	<i>wie</i>	how	interrogative
Word 2	<i>ist</i>	is	verb
Word 3	<i>es</i>	it	pronoun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #11 How old are you in German?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

11

GERMAN

1. Q: Wie alt bist du?
2. A: Ich bin 18 Jahre alt.
3. A: Ich bin 20 Jahre alt.
4. A: Ich bin 39 Jahre alt.
5. A: Ich bin 7 Jahre alt.

ENGLISH

1. Q: How old are you?
2. A: I'm 18 years old.
3. A: I'm 20 years old.
4. A: I'm 39 years old.
5. A: I'm 7 years old.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
alt	old	adjective	
wie	how	pronoun	
sein	to be	verb	

du	you (informal)	pronoun	
ich	I	pronoun	
achtzehn	eighteen (18)		
bin	am	conjugated verb	
Jahr	year	noun	neutral
zwanzig	twenty (20)	numeral	
neununddreißig	thirty nine (39)	numeral	
sieben	seven (7)	numeral	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Der Mann ist sehr alt. The man is very old.</p>	<p>Dieses Gebäude ist 100 Jahre alt. This building is 100 years old.</p>
<p>Wie teuer sind die Äpfel? How much are the apples?</p>	<p>Wie geht es Ihnen heute? How are you today?</p>
<p>Ich bin aus Deutschland. I am from Germany.</p>	<p>Es ist eine Kamera. It's a camera.</p>
<p>Du bist gut. You are good.</p>	<p>Bist du dir sicher? Are you sure?</p>
<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun! I was so busy last week!</p>	<p>Ich bin Lisa. I am Lisa.</p>
<p>Sophie ist gerade achtzehn geworden. Sophie just turned eighteen.</p>	<p>Ich bin zehn Jahre alt. I am ten years old.</p>

<p>Ich bin Arzt. I am a doctor.</p>	<p>Ich bin 18 Jahre alt. I'm 18 years old.</p>
<p>Dieses Gebäude ist 100 Jahre alt. This building is 100 years old.</p>	<p>Ich bin 20 Jahre alt. I'm 20 years old.</p>
<p>Es wäre so schön, nochmal zwanzig zu sein. It would be so nice to be twenty once again.</p>	<p>Ich bin 39 Jahre alt. I'm 39 years old.</p>

Die Woche hat sieben Tage.

The week has seven days.

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say How old are you? in German.

The question is broken down into {4} words:

	<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Class</i>
Word 1	<i>wie</i>	how	interrogative
Word 2	<i>alt</i>	old	adjective
Word 3	<i>bist</i>	are	verb
Word 4	<i>du</i>	you	pronoun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #12

When is your birthday in German?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

12

GERMAN

1. Q: Wann ist dein Geburtstag?
2. A: Am 22. August.
3. A: Am 13. Januar.
4. A: Am 26. Februar.
5. A: Am 1. Mai.

ENGLISH

1. Q: When is your birthday?
2. A: It's August 22.
3. A: It's January 13.
4. A: It's February 26.
5. A: It's May 1.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
1. Mai	May 1		
26. Februar	February 26		
13. Januar	January 13th		

ist	is	conjugated verb	
wann	when	adverb	
dein	your (informal)	pronoun	
Geburtstag	birthday	noun	masculine
am	at	contraction	
zweiundzwanzig	twenty two (22)	numeral	
August	August	noun	masculine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Am 1. Mai. It's May 1.</p>	<p>Am 26. Februar. It's February 26.</p>
<p>Am 13. Januar. It's January 13.</p>	<p>Sie ist süß. She is cute.</p>
<p>Das ist Lisa. That's Lisa.</p>	<p>Wann kommst du? When will you come (over)?</p>
<p>Dein Haus ist sehr groß. Your house is very big.</p>	<p>Kommst du allein oder kommt dein Mann auch? Are you coming alone or is your husband coming, too?</p>
<p>Wann hast du Geburtstag? When is your birthday?</p>	<p>Michaela hat diese Woche Geburtstag. It's Michaela's birthday this week.</p>

Am 22. August.

It's August 22.

Im August haben die meisten deutschen Schüler Sommerferien.

In August, most German pupils have summer holidays.

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say When is your birthday? in German.

The question is broken down into {4} words:

	<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Class</i>
Word 1	<i>wann</i>	when	interrogative
Word 2	<i>ist</i>	is	verb
Word 3	<i>dein</i>	your	pronoun
Word 4	<i>Geburtstag</i>	birthday	noun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #13

Do you have any brothers or sisters in German?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

13

GERMAN

1. Q: Hast du Geschwister?
2. A: Ich habe eine Schwester.
3. A: Ich habe einen Bruder.
4. A: Ich habe einen Bruder und eine Schwester.
5. A: Ich habe keine Geschwister.

ENGLISH

1. Q: Do you have any brothers or sisters?
2. A: I have a sister.
3. A: I have a brother.
4. A: I have a brother and a sister.
5. A: I have no siblings.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
einen Bruder	a brother	expression	
keine Geschwister	no siblings	expression	

haben	to have	verb	irregular; ich habe, du hast, er hat, wir haben, ihr habt, sie haben
du	you (informally)	personal pronoun	
Geschwister	brothers and sisters, siblings	noun; plural, die	always plural
ich	I	personal pronoun	
eine	one, a	article	feminine
Schwester	sister	noun; feminine, die	plural: Schwestern

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Ich habe einen Bruder. I have a brother.</p>	<p>Ich habe keine Geschwister. I have no siblings.</p>
<p>Du hast eine große Klappe. You have a big mouth.</p>	<p>Haben Sie Zeit? Do you have time?</p>
<p>Du bist gut. You are good.</p>	<p>Bist du dir sicher? Are you sure?</p>
<p>Hast du Geschwister? Do you have any brothers or sisters?</p>	<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun! I was so busy last week!</p>
<p>Ich bin Lisa. I am Lisa.</p>	<p>Die Maus isst eine Traube. The mouse is eating a grape.</p>
<p>Die Frau genießt eine leckere Pizza. The woman is enjoying delicious pizza.</p>	<p>Ich habe eine Schwester. I have a sister.</p>

Hör auf, deine Schwester zu ärgern!

Stop annoying your sister!

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say Do you have any brothers and sisters? in German. The question is broken down into {3} words:

	<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Class</i>
Word 1	<i>hast</i>	have (2nd person)	verb
Word 2	<i>du</i>	you	pronoun
Word 3	<i>Geschwister</i>	siblings	noun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #14 How tall are you in German?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

14

GERMAN

1. Q: Wie groß bist du?
2. A: Ich bin 1,80 m groß.
3. A: Ich bin 1,60 m groß.
4. A: Ich bin 1,73 m groß.
5. A: Ich bin 1,81 m groß.

ENGLISH

1. Q: How tall are you?
2. A: I'm 180 cm tall.
3. A: I'm 160 cm tall.
4. A: I'm 173 cm tall.
5. A: I'm 181 cm tall.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
1,81m	181 cm		
1,73 m	173 cm		
1,60 m	160 cm		
1,80 m	180 cm		

wie	how	pronoun	when not used as a question word, "wie" has the meaning of "as"
groß	tall, big	adjective	
sein	to be	verb	ich bin, du bist, er ist, wir sind, ihr seid, sie sind
du	you (informally)	personal pronoun	
ich	I	personal pronoun	
bin	am	conjugated verb	sein - er ist, er war, ist gewesen; ich bin, ich war, ich bin gewesen

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Ich bin 1,81 m groß. I'm 181 cm tall.	Ich bin 1,73 m groß. I'm 173 cm tall.
Ich bin 1,60 m groß. I'm 160 cm tall.	Ich bin 1,80 m groß. I'm 180 cm tall.
Wie ist dein Name? What's your name?	Wie heißt du? How are you called?
Thomas ist genauso groß wie Sven. Thomas is just as tall as Sven.	Du hast eine große Klappe. You have a big mouth.
Das kann doch nicht wahr sein! That can't be true!	Ich bin Student. I am a student.

<p>Du bist gut. You are good.</p>	<p>Bist du dir sicher? Are you sure?</p>
<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun! I was so busy last week!</p>	<p>Ich bin Lisa. I am Lisa.</p>
<p>Ich bin zehn Jahre alt. I am ten years old.</p>	<p>Ich bin Arzt. I am a doctor.</p>

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say How tall are you? in German.
The question is broken down into {4} words:

	<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Class</i>
Word 1	<i>wie</i>	how	interrogative
Word 2	<i>groß</i>	tall	adjective
Word 3	<i>bist</i>	are (2nd person singular)	verb
Word 4	<i>du</i>	you	pronoun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #15

Do you have a cell phone? in German

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

15

GERMAN

1. Q: Hast du ein Handy?
2. A: Ja, ich habe ein iPhone.
3. A: Ja, ich habe ein Blackberry.
4. A: Ja, ich habe ein Nokia.
5. A: Ja, ich habe ein Samsung.

ENGLISH

1. Q: Do you have a cell phone?
2. A: Yes, I have an iPhone.
3. A: Yes, I have a Blackberry.
4. A: Yes, I have a Nokia.
5. A: Yes, I have a Samsung.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
Samsung	Samsung	proper name	
Nokia	Nokia	proper name	
Blackberry	Blackberry	proper name	
iPhone	iPhone	noun	

haben	to have	verb	irregular; ich habe, du hast, er hat, wir haben, ihr habt, sie haben
du	you (informally)	personal pronoun	
ein	a, an	article	changes according to gender, number and case of following noun
Handy	cell phone, mobile phone	noun	supposedly derived from English ;-), neuter
ja	yes	adverb	
ich	I	personal pronoun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Ja, ich habe ein Samsung. Yes, I have a Samsung.</p>	<p>Ja, ich habe ein Nokia. Yes, I have a Nokia.</p>
<p>Ja, ich habe ein Blackberry. Yes, I have a Blackberry.</p>	<p>Ja, ich habe ein iPhone. Yes, I have an iPhone.</p>
<p>Du hast eine große Klappe. You have a big mouth.</p>	<p>Haben Sie Zeit? Do you have time?</p>
<p>Du bist gut. You are good.</p>	<p>Bist du dir sicher? Are you sure?</p>
<p>Heute ist ein guter Tag. Today is a good day.</p>	<p>Das war nur ein Witz. That was just a joke.</p>

<p>Ich habe ein Handy. I have a cell phone.</p>	<p>Na schön, du hast ja Recht. Fair enough, you're right. (In the sense of "I'm giving in.")</p>
<p>Ja, das stimmt. Yes, that's right.</p>	<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun! I was so busy last week!</p>
<p>Ich bin Lisa. I am Lisa.</p>	

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say Do you have a cell phone? in German.
The question is broken down into {4} words:

	<i>German</i>	English	Class
Word 1	<i>hast</i>	have (2nd pers singular)	verb
Word 2	<i>du</i>	you	pronoun
Word 3	<i>ein</i>	a	article
Word 4	<i>Handy</i>	cell phone	noun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #16 How are you? in German

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar

16

GERMAN

1. Q: Wie geht es dir?
2. A: Mir geht es gut.
3. A: Mir geht es schlecht.
4. A: Mir geht es nicht gut.
5. A: Mir geht es wirklich schlecht.

ENGLISH

1. Q: How are you?
2. A: I'm fine.
3. A: I'm sick.
4. A: I'm not well.
5. A: I'm really sick.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
wie	how	pronoun
gehen	to go, to walk	verb
es	it	pronoun
dir	you	pronoun

mir	me	personal pronoun
gut	good	adjective
schlecht	sick	adjective
wirklich	really	adverb
nicht gut	not well	adjective

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Wie teuer sind die Äpfel? How much are the apples?</p>	<p>Wie geht es Ihnen heute? How are you today?</p>
<p>Ich gehe nach Amerika. I go to America.</p>	<p>Lass uns ins Kino gehen. Let's go to the movies.</p>
<p>Es ist jetzt halb zehn. It is now half past nine. (half ten)</p>	<p>Es ist 11 Uhr. It's 11:00.</p>
<p>Hallo! Wie geht es Dir? Hello! How are you?</p>	<p>Was ist zwischen dir und Marie los? What's the matter between you and Marie?</p>
<p>Komm mit mir. Come with me.</p>	<p>Heute ist ein guter Tag. Today is a good day.</p>
<p>Das klingt gut. Sounds good.</p>	<p>Mir geht es schlecht. I'm sick.</p>
<p>Diese Stadt ist wirklich groß. This city is really big.</p>	<p>Das war wirklich lecker. This was really yummy.</p>
<p>Mir geht es nicht gut. I'm not well.</p>	

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say How are you? in German.
The question is broken down into {4} words:

	<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Class</i>
Word 1	<i>wie</i>	how	interrogative
Word 2	<i>geht</i>	goes (2nd pers singular)	verb
Word 3	<i>es</i>	it	pronoun
Word 4	<i>dir</i>	you	pronoun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #17

What time is it? in German

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

17

GERMAN

1. Q: Wie spät ist es?
2. A: Es ist 12 Uhr.
3. A: Es ist 9 Uhr.
4. A: Es ist 11 Uhr.
5. A: Es ist 16 Uhr.

ENGLISH

1. Q: What time is it?
2. A: It's 12.00
3. A: It's 9.00
4. A: It's 11.00
5. A: It's 16.00

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
9 Uhr	9:00		
11 Uhr	11:00		
16 Uhr	16:00		

wie	how	pronoun	when not used as a question word, "wie" has the meaning of "as"
spät	late	adjective	
ist	is	conjugated verb	sein - er ist, er war, ist gewesen; ich bin, ich war, ich bin gewesen
es	it	personal pronoun	
zwölf	twelve	numeral	
Uhr	clock; o'clock	noun, feminine, die	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Es ist 9 Uhr. It's 9:00.	Es ist 11 Uhr. It's 11:00.
Es ist 16 Uhr. It's 16:00.	Wie ist dein Name? What's your name?
Wie heißt du? How are you called?	Er kommt zu spät. He is coming (arriving) too late.
Sie ist süß. She is cute.	Das ist Lisa. That's Lisa.
Es ist schön, dass Sie da sind. It's nice that you're there.	Es ist früh am Morgen. It is early in the morning.
Katjas Sohn ist jetzt zwölf Jahre alt. Katja's son is twelve years old now.	Es ist 16 Uhr. It's 16:00.

Die Uhr tickt.

The clock is ticking

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say *What time is it?* in German.

The question is broken down into {4} words:

	<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Class</i>
Word 1	<i>wie</i>	how	interrogative
Word 2	<i>spät</i>	late	adjective
Word 3	<i>ist</i>	is	verb (3rd person singular)
Word 4	<i>es</i>	it	pronoun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #18 What are you doing? in German

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

18

GERMAN

1. Q: Was machst du gerade?
2. A: Ich lese gerade ein Buch.
3. A: Ich spiele gerade ein Videospiel.
4. A: Ich backe gerade einen Kuchen.
5. A: Ich telefoniere gerade.

ENGLISH

1. Q: What are you doing?
2. A: I'm reading a book.
3. A: I'm playing a video game.
4. A: I'm baking a cake.
5. A: I'm talking on the phone.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
telefoniere gerade	talking on the phone	expression	
backe gerade einen Kuchen	baking a cake	expression	

spiele gerade ein Videospiel	playing a video game	expression	
was	what	pronoun	
machen	to make, to do	verb	weak verb
du	you (informally)	personal pronoun	
gerade	currently	adverb	
ich	I	personal pronoun	
lesen	to read	verb	er liest, er las, er hat gelesen
ein	a, an	article	changes according to gender, number and case of following noun
Buch	book	noun	plural: Bücher

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Ich telefoniere gerade. I'm talking on the phone.</p>	<p>Ich backe gerade einen Kuchen. I'm baking a cake.</p>
<p>Ich spiele gerade ein Videospiel. I'm playing a video game.</p>	<p>Was ist das? What is this?</p>
<p>Ich mache Kaffee. I am making coffee.</p>	<p>Du bist gut. You are good.</p>
<p>Bist du dir sicher? Are you sure?</p>	<p>Was machst du gerade? What are you doing?</p>

<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun!</p> <p>I was so busy last week!</p>	<p>Ich bin Lisa.</p> <p>I am Lisa.</p>
<p>Ich lese gerade ein gutes Buch.</p> <p>I am reading a good book at the moment.</p>	<p>Heute ist ein guter Tag.</p> <p>Today is a good day.</p>
<p>Das war nur ein Witz.</p> <p>That was just a joke.</p>	

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say *What are you doing?* in German. The question is broken down into {4} words:

	German	English	Class
Word 1	was	what	interrogative
Word 2	machst	do (2nd person singular)	verb
Word 3	du	you	pronoun
Word 4	gerade	currently	adverb

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #19

What's wrong? in German

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

19

GERMAN

1. Q: Was ist los?
2. A: Ich bin müde.
3. A: Ich bin krank.
4. A: Ich bin besorgt.
5. A: Ich bin wütend.

ENGLISH

1. Q: What's wrong?
2. A: I'm tired.
3. A: I'm sick.
4. A: I'm worried.
5. A: I'm angry.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
besorgt	worried	adjective	
wütend	angry	adjective	
was	what	pronoun	

ist	is	conjugated verb	sein - er ist, er war, ist gewesen; ich bin, ich war, ich bin gewesen
los	happening		exp: Etwas ist los. - Something is happening.
ich	I	personal pronoun	
bin	am	conjugated verb	sein - er ist, er war, ist gewesen; ich bin, ich war, ich bin gewesen
müde	tired	adjective	
krank	ill, sick	adjective	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Ich bin besorgt. I'm worried.	Ich bin wütend. I'm angry.
Was ist das? What is this?	Sie ist süß. She is cute.
Das ist Lisa. That's Lisa.	Was ist los? What's wrong?
Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun! I was so busy last week!	Ich bin Lisa. I am Lisa.
Ich bin zehn Jahre alt. I am ten years old.	Ich bin Arzt. I am a doctor.

Heute bin ich sehr müde.

I am very tired today.

Hoffentlich kriegen wir den jungen, kranken Vogel, den wir gefunden haben, wieder aufpäppelt.

Hopefully we'll be able to coddle up the young, sick bird that we found.

Bist du krank? - Ach was, ich habe nur einen Schnupfen.

Are you sick? - Nah, I just have the snuffles.

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say What's wrong? in German.

The question is broken down into {3} words:

	<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Class</i>
Word 1	<i>was</i>	what	interrogative
Word 2	<i>ist</i>	is	verb
Word 3	<i>los</i>	happening	adjective

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #20 What's the weather like in German?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

20

GERMAN

1. Q: Wie ist das Wetter in Berlin?
2. A: Es ist sonnig.
3. A: Es ist regnerisch.
4. A: Es ist bewölkt.
5. A: Es ist stürmisch.

ENGLISH

1. Q: What's the weather like in Berlin?
2. A: It's sunny.
3. A: It's rainy.
4. A: It's cloudy.
5. A: It's stormy.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
stürmisch	stormy	adjective	
wie	how	pronoun	when not used as a question word, "wie" has the meaning of "as"

ist	is	conjugated verb	sein - er ist, er war, ist gewesen; ich bin, ich war, ich bin gewesen
das	that, the (neuter)	demonstrative pronoun / definite article	
Wetter	weather	noun	plural is the same
in	in	preposition	prepositions are rarely the same across languages, so this can be used in situations where English would not use "in"
Berlin	Berlin	noun	
es	it	personal pronoun	
sonnig	sunny	adjective	
regnerisch	rainy	adjective	
bewölkt	cloudy	adjective	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Es ist stürmisch. It's stormy.</p>	<p>Wie ist dein Name? What's your name?</p>
<p>Wie heißt du? How are you called?</p>	<p>Sie ist süß. She is cute.</p>
<p>Das ist Lisa. That's Lisa.</p>	<p>Das Wasser ist kalt. The water is cold.</p>

<p>Das Wetter heute ist sehr schwül.</p> <p>The weather is really humid today.</p>	<p>Ist Bier teuer in Deutschland?</p> <p>Is beer expensive in Germany?</p>
<p>Der Schlüssel ist in meiner Hosentasche.</p> <p>The key is in my pants pocket.</p>	<p>Ich wohne nicht in Berlin.</p> <p>I don't live in Berlin.</p>
<p>Berlin ist eine wirklich interessante Metropole.</p> <p>Berlin is a really interesting metropolis.</p>	<p>Es ist schön, dass Sie da sind.</p> <p>It's nice that you're there.</p>
<p>Es ist früh am Morgen.</p> <p>It is early in the morning.</p>	<p>Es ist ein sonniger Morgen.</p> <p>It's a sunny morning.</p>
<p>Es ist regnerisch.</p> <p>It's rainy.</p>	<p>Heute ist es bewölkt.</p> <p>It's cloudy today.</p>

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say *What's the weather like in Berlin?* in German. The question is broken down into {6} words:

	<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Class</i>
Word 1	<i>wie</i>	how	interrogative
Word 2	<i>ist</i>	is	verb
Word 3	<i>das</i>	the	article
Word 4	<i>Wetter</i>	weather	noun
Word 5	<i>in</i>	in	preposition
Word 6	<i>Berlin</i>	Berlin	noun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #21 Are you hungry? in German

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

21

GERMAN

1. Q: Hast du Hunger?
2. A: Ja, ich habe ein bisschen Hunger.
3. A: Ja, ich habe ziemlich Hunger.
4. A: Ja, ich habe großen Hunger.
5. A: Ja, ich habe sehr Hunger.

ENGLISH

1. Q: Are you hungry?
2. A: Yes, I'm a little hungry.
3. A: Yes, I'm quite hungry.
4. A: Yes, I'm really hungry.
5. A: Yes, I'm very hungry.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
haben	to have	verb	irregular; ich habe, du hast, er hat, wir haben, ihr habt, sie haben
du	you (informally)	personal pronoun	

Hunger	hunger	noun, masculine, der	no plural
ja	yes	adverb	
ich	I	personal pronoun	
ein	a, an	article	changes according to gender, number and case of following noun
bisschen	a little	pronoun	
ziemlichen	quite	conjugated particle	
großen	really	conjugated adjective	
sehr	very	adverb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Du hast eine große Klappe. You have a big mouth.</p>	<p>Haben Sie Zeit? Do you have time?</p>
<p>Du bist gut. You are good.</p>	<p>Bist du dir sicher? Are you sure?</p>
<p>Ich habe Hunger. I am hungry.</p>	<p>Na schön, du hast ja Recht. Fair enough, you're right. (In the sense of "I'm giving in.")</p>
<p>Ja, das stimmt. Yes, that's right.</p>	<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun! I was so busy last week!</p>
<p>Ich bin Lisa. I am Lisa.</p>	<p>Heute ist ein guter Tag. Today is a good day.</p>

<p>Das war nur ein Witz.</p> <p>That was just a joke.</p>	<p>Mein Auto ist ein bisschen dreckig.</p> <p>My car is a little dirty.</p>
<p>Ich spreche nur ein bisschen Deutsch.</p> <p>I only speak a little German.</p>	<p>Ja, ich habe ziemlich Hunger.</p> <p>Yes, I'm quite hungry.</p>
<p>Ja, ich habe großen Hunger.</p> <p>Yes, I'm really hungry.</p>	<p>Das ist sehr gut!</p> <p>That's very good!</p>

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say Are you hungry? in German.
The question is broken down into {3} words:

	<i>German</i>	English	Class
Word 1	hast	have (2nd pers singular)	verb
Word 2	du	you	pronoun
Word 3	Hunger	hunger	noun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #22 What's this? in German

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

22

GERMAN

1. Q: Was ist das?
2. A: Es ist eine Kamera.
3. A: Es ist eine deutsche Zeitung.
4. A: Es ist ein Zelt.
5. A: Es ist eine Heizung.

ENGLISH

1. Q: What's this?
2. A: It's a camera.
3. A: It's a German newspaper.
4. A: It's a tent.
5. A: It's a heater.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
Kamera	camera		plural: Kameras
eine deutsche Zeitung	a German newspaper	expression	
Zelt	tent	noun; neuter, das	plural: Zelte

eine Heizung	a heater	noun; feminine, die	plural: Heizungen; "eine" = indefinite article
was	what	pronoun	
ist	is	conjugated verb	sein - er ist, er war, ist gewesen; ich bin, ich war, ich bin gewesen
das	that, the (neuter)	demonstrative pronoun / definite article	
es	it	personal pronoun	
eine	one, a	article	feminine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Es ist eine Kamera. It's a camera.</p>	<p>Der interessierte Affe schaut in die Kamera. The interested monkey is looking into the camera.</p>
<p>Es ist eine deutsche Zeitung. It's a German newspaper.</p>	<p>Es ist ein Zelt. It's a tent.</p>
<p>Es ist eine Heizung. It's a heater.</p>	<p>Was ist das? What is this?</p>
<p>Sie ist süß. She is cute.</p>	<p>Das ist Lisa. That's Lisa.</p>
<p>Das Wasser ist kalt. The water is cold.</p>	<p>Es ist schön, dass Sie da sind. It's nice that you're there.</p>

Es ist früh am Morgen.

It is early in the morning.

Die Maus isst eine Traube.

The mouse is eating a grape.

Die Frau genießt eine leckere Pizza.

The woman is enjoying delicious pizza.

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say What's this? in German.

The question is broken down into {3} words:

	<i>German</i>	English	Class
Word 1	<i>was</i>	what	interrogative
Word 2	<i>ist</i>	is	verb
Word 3	<i>das</i>	that	pronoun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #23 Whose is this? in German

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar

23

GERMAN

1. Q: Wem gehört das?
2. A: Das gehört mir.
3. A: Das gehört dir.
4. A: Das gehört meiner Freundin.
5. A: Das gehört meinem Freund.

ENGLISH

1. Q: Whose is this?
2. A: It's mine.
3. A: It's yours.
4. A: It's my girlfriend's.
5. A: It's my boyfriend's.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
meiner Freundin	my girlfriend's	expression
meinem Freund	my boyfriend's	expression
wem	whose	questionword
gehören	belong	verb

das	that, the (neuter)	demonstrative pronoun / definite article
mir	me	personal pronoun
dir	you	pronoun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Das gehört meiner Freundin. It's my girlfriend's.</p>	<p>Das gehört meinem Freund. It's my boyfriend's.</p>
<p>Wem gehört das? Whose is this?</p>	<p>Wem gehört das Handy? Who does this mobile belong to?</p>
<p>Ein bekannter deutscher Schlager sagt: "Er gehört zu mir, wie mein Name an der Tür". A well known German pop song says: "he belongs to me, like my nameplate on the door".</p>	<p>Das Wasser ist kalt. The water is cold.</p>
<p>Komm mit mir. Come with me.</p>	<p>Hallo! Wie geht es Dir? Hello! How are you?</p>
<p>Was ist zwischen dir und Marie los? What's the matter between you and Marie?</p>	

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say Whose is this? in German.
The question is broken down into {3} words:

<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Class</i>
---------------	----------------	--------------

Word 1	<i>wem</i>	whose	interrogative
Word 2	<i>gehört</i>	belong	verb
Word 3	<i>das</i>	that	pronoun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #24

Have you been to Berlin? in German

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar

24

GERMAN

1. Q: Warst du schon einmal in Berlin?
2. A: Ja, zwei Mal.
3. A: Ja, aber nur ein Mal.
4. A: Ja, mehrere Male.
5. A: Ja, ungefähr zehn Mal.

ENGLISH

1. Q: Have you been to Berlin?
2. A: Yes, I've been twice.
3. A: Yes, I've been but only once.
4. A: Yes, I've been several times.
5. A: Yes, I've been about ten times.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
ungefähr zehn Mal	about ten times	expression	
mehrere Male	several times	expression	
aber nur ein Mal	but only once	expression	

sein	to be	verb	ich bin, du bist, er ist, wir sind, ihr seid, sie sind
du	you (informally)	personal pronoun	
schon	already	adverb	
einmal / mal	once; sometime	adverb	colloquial meaning is „sometime“ or it can be inserted to make a request sound more casual
in	in	preposition	prepositions are rarely the same across languages, so this can be used in situations where English would not use "in"
Berlin	Berlin	noun	
ja	yes	adverb	
zwei	two (2)	numeral	
Mal	multiplication mark, stigma,	noun; neuter, das	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Ja, ungefähr zehn Mal. Yes, I've been about ten times.</p>	<p>Ja, mehrere Male. Yes, I've been several times.</p>
<p>Ja, aber nur ein Mal. Yes, I've been but only once.</p>	<p>Das kann doch nicht wahr sein! That can't be true!</p>

<p>Ich bin Student.</p> <p>I am a student.</p>	<p>Du bist gut.</p> <p>You are good.</p>
<p>Bist du dir sicher?</p> <p>Are you sure?</p>	<p>Bist du schon müde?</p> <p>Are you tired already?</p>
<p>Man muss auch mal etwas wagen.</p> <p>You have to risk something sometime.</p>	<p>Lass uns noch einmal über die Sache reden.</p> <p>Let's talk about this thing once more.</p>
<p>Ist Bier teuer in Deutschland?</p> <p>Is beer expensive in Germany?</p>	<p>Der Schlüssel ist in meiner Hosentasche.</p> <p>The key is in my pants pocket.</p>
<p>Ich wohne nicht in Berlin.</p> <p>I don't live in Berlin.</p>	<p>Berlin ist eine wirklich interessante Metropole.</p> <p>Berlin is a really interesting metropolis.</p>
<p>Na schön, du hast ja Recht.</p> <p>Fair enough, you're right. (In the sense of "I'm giving in.")</p>	<p>Ja, das stimmt.</p> <p>Yes, that's right.</p>
<p>Möchtest du ein oder zwei Brötchen?</p> <p>Do you want one or two rolls?</p>	<p>Nächstes Mal wird alles anders.</p> <p>Next time it will be completely different.</p>

Erst einmal wirst du mir sagen, was hier los ist!

First you are going to tell me what's going on here!

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say Have you been to Berlin? in German.

The question is broken down into {6} words:

	German	English	Class
Word 1	<i>warst</i>	were	verb (2nd pers singular)
Word 2	<i>du</i>	you	pronoun
Word 3	<i>schon</i>	already	adverb
Word 4	<i>einmal</i>	once	adverb
Word 5	<i>in</i>	in	preposition
Word 6	<i>Berlin</i>	Berlin	noun

LESSON NOTES

Top 25 German Questions You Need to Know S1 #25 How much is this? in German

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar

25

GERMAN

1. Q: Wie viel kostet das?
2. A: Es kostet 10 Euro.
3. A: Es kostet 15 Euro.
4. A: Es kostet 50 Euro.
5. A: Es kostet 1000 Euro.

ENGLISH

1. Q: How much is this?
2. A: It's 10 euro.
3. A: It's 15 euro.
4. A: It's 50 euro.
5. A: It's 1000 euro.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
15 Euro	15 euro	
50 Euro	50 euro	
1000 Euro	1000 euro	

kosten	to cost	verb
wie viel	how much	question word
das	that, the (neuter)	demonstrative pronoun / definite article
es	it	pronoun
zehn	ten (10)	numeral
Euro	euro(s)	noun; masculine, der

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Es kostet 15 Euro. It's 15 euro.	Es kostet 50 Euro. It's 50 euro.
Es kostet 1000 Euro. It's 1000 euro.	Wie viel kostet dieses Stück? How much does this piece cost?
Das Wasser ist kalt. The water is cold.	Es ist jetzt halb zehn. It is now half past nine. (half ten)
Es ist 11 Uhr. It's 11:00.	Ich bin zehn Jahre alt. I am ten years old.

Der Wechselkurs des Yen zum Euro ist heute 10% niedriger.

The exchange rate of the yen into the euro went down by 10% today.

GRAMMAR

The focus of this lesson is how to say How much is this? in German.

The question is broken down into {3} words:

German

English

Class

Word 1	<i>Wie viel</i>	how much	interrogative
Word 2	<i>kostet</i>	cost	verb
Word 3	<i>das</i>	that	pronoun

 GermanPod101.com

GermanPod101.com



3 MINUTE
GERMAN

innovativeLANGUAGE.COM

innovativeLANGUAGE.COM

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #1 Self Introduction

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

1

GERMAN

1. Hallo, ich heiße Albert.
2. Guten Tag, ich heiße Albert Metz.
3. Schön, dich kennenzulernen.
4. Schön, Sie kennenzulernen.

ENGLISH

1. Hi I'm Albert. (informal)
2. Good day, I'm Albert Metz. (formal)
3. Nice to meet you. (informal)
4. Nice to meet you. (formal)

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
kennenzulernen	to know you	
Hallo	Hi	interjection
ich	I	personal pronoun; nominative
heiße	am	verb
Albert	Albert, person's name	
guten Tag	good day	expression

Albert Metz	Albert Metz, person's full name	
Schön	pleasure	adjective, adverb
dich	you (informal, as an object)	personal pronoun; accusative
Sie	you (formal)	personal pronoun; Spelled with a capital letter in order to express politeness also in writing.

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun!</p> <p>I was so busy last week!</p>	<p>Ich bin Lisa.</p> <p>I am Lisa.</p>
<p>Ich wünsche Ihnen einen guten Tag!</p> <p>Have a good day!</p>	<p>Guten Tag Herr Dr. Heinrich.</p> <p>Good day doctor Heinrich.</p>
<p>Ich liebe dich.</p> <p>I love you.</p>	<p>Sie sind nett.</p> <p>You are nice.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to introduce yourself.

	Register	German	English	Important Notes
Phrase 1	informal	<i>Hallo, ich heiÙe Albert.</i>	Hi I'm Albert.	
Word 1		<i>Hallo</i>	Hi	

Word 2		<i>ich</i>	I
Word 3		<i>heiße</i>	am conjugated verb
Word 4		<i>Albert</i>	Albert, person's name
Phrase 2	formal	<i>Guten Tag, ich heiße Albert Metz.</i>	Good day, I'm Albert Metz.
Word 1		<i>Guten Tag</i>	Good day
Word 2		<i>ich</i>	I
Word 3		<i>heiße</i>	am
Word 4		<i>Albert Metz</i>	Albert Metz, person's full name
Phrase 3	informal	<i>Schön, dich kennenzulerne nen.</i>	Nice to meet you.
Word 1		<i>Schön</i>	pleasure
Word 2		<i>dich</i>	you (informal)
Word 3		<i>kennenzulerne n</i>	to meet
Phrase 4	formal	<i>Schön, Sie kennenzulerne nen.</i>	Nice to meet you.
Word 1		<i>Schön</i>	pleasure
Word 2		<i>Sie</i>	you (formal)
Word 3		<i>kennenzulerne n</i>	to know you

CULTURAL INSIGHT

When you introduce yourself, it's good manners to shake hands. If you are not sure whether to use *schön, dich kennenzulernen* or *schön, Sie kennenzulernen* just say simply *sehr erfreut*.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #2

Greetings

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

2

GERMAN

1. Hallo.
2. Guten Tag!
3. Tschüss!
4. Auf Wiedersehen!

ENGLISH

1. Hi. (informal)
2. Good day. (formal)
3. Good-bye! (informal)
4. Goodbye. (formal, lit. "see again.")

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
Wiedersehen!	Good bye!		
Hallo.	Hi		
guten	good	adjective	
Tag	day	noun	masculine
Tschüss!	Bye!		

auf	on, onto (upon)	preposition; also used for some cases where English would use "in" or "at", as prepositions usually don't correspond across languages.
-----	-----------------	--

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Dieser Tag ist ein Feiertag. This day is a public holiday.</p>	<p>Heute ist ein guter Tag. Today is a good day.</p>
<p>Die Zeitung liegt auf dem Tisch. The newspaper lies on the table.</p>	<p>Verstehst du mich, wenn ich auf Englisch spreche? Do you understand me when I speak on (in) English?</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to greet someone .

	Register	German	English
Phrase 1	informal	<i>Hallo.</i>	Hi.
Word 1		<i>Hallo.</i>	Hi
Phrase 2	formal	<i>Guten Tag!</i>	Good day.
Word 1		<i>Guten</i>	good
Word 2		<i>Tag</i>	day
Phrase 3	informal	<i>Tschüss!</i>	Good-bye!
Word 1		<i>Tschüss!</i>	Bye!

Phrase 4	formal	<i>Auf Wiedersehen!</i>	Goodbye.
Word 1		<i>Auf</i>	on, upon
Word 2		<i>Wiedersehen!</i>	Good bye!

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Due to the large number of dialects in Germany, you may hear many different greeting phrases depending on the area. In Austria and in the catholic southern part of Germany, they even say *Grüß Gott*, which means "greetings to god". In the past, people from the north could barely talk to people from the south, since they spoke very different languages. But nowadays, if you use these common phrases then everyone will understand you, I'm sure!

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #3

Manners

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 3 Cultural Insight

3

GERMAN

1. Danke.
2. Ich danke Ihnen.
3. Bitteschön.
4. Gern geschehen.

ENGLISH

1. Thank you. (informal)
2. Thank you. (formal)
3. You're welcome. (informal)
4. You're welcome. (formal)

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
Gern	with pleasure	
geschehen	happened	verb
ich	I	personal pronoun; nominative
danke	thank you	interjection
Ihnen	you (formal in the dative case)	personal pronoun; dative

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun!</p> <p>I was so busy last week!</p>	<p>Ich bin Lisa.</p> <p>I am Lisa.</p>
<p>Danke für die schönen Blumen.</p> <p>Thank you for the beautiful flowers.</p>	<p>Wie geht es Ihnen heute?</p> <p>How are you today?</p>
<p>Ich gebe Ihnen mein Ehrenwort.</p> <p>I give you my word of honor.</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to thank other people in various ways.

	Register	German	English
Phrase 1		<i>Danke</i>	Thank you.
Phrase 2	formal	<i>Ich danke Ihnen.</i>	Thank you.
Word 1		<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2		<i>danke</i>	thank you
Word 3		<i>Ihnen</i>	you (formal in the dative case)
Phrase 3	formal	<i>Bitteschön.</i>	You're welcome.
Word 1		<i>Bitteschön</i>	You're welcome
Phrase 4		<i>Gern geschehen.</i>	You're welcome.
Word 1		<i>Gern</i>	with pleasure
Word 2		<i>geschehen</i>	happened

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If you're not sure whether to use *Danke* or *Ich danke Ihnen*, keeping it simple is always your safest bet. You don't have to worry about formal or informal situations; *Danke* can be used with just about anyone, anywhere, or at any time!

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #4

How Are You?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

4

GERMAN

1. Wie geht es dir?
2. Wie geht es Ihnen?
3. Mir geht es gut.
4. Mir geht es nicht gut.

ENGLISH

1. How are you? (informal)
2. How are you? (formal)
3. I'm fine. (informal)
4. I'm not well. (formal)

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
wie	how	pronoun
geht	to go	
es	it	pronoun
dir	you (informal)	personal pronoun; dative
Ihnen	you (formal in the dative case)	personal pronoun; dative
Mir	I	personal pronoun; dative

gut	good	adjective
nicht	not	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Wie teuer sind die Äpfel? How much are the apples?</p>	<p>Wie geht es Ihnen heute? How are you today?</p>
<p>Es ist jetzt halb zehn. It is now half past nine. (half ten)</p>	<p>Es ist 11 Uhr. It's 11:00.</p>
<p>Wie geht es Ihnen heute? How are you today?</p>	<p>Ich gebe Ihnen mein Ehrenwort. I give you my word of honor.</p>
<p>Die Stunde war wirklich gut, und ich kann die Nächste kaum erwarten. The class was really good, and I can't wait for the next one.</p>	<p>Heute ist ein guter Tag. Today is a good day.</p>
<p>Das klingt gut. Sounds good.</p>	<p>Das habe ich nicht gesagt! I didn't say that!</p>
<p>Du bist nicht mein Vater! You aren't my father!</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask how somebody is.

	Register	German	English
Phrase 1	informal	<i>Wie geht es dir?</i>	How are you?

Word 1		<i>wie</i>	how
Word 2		<i>geht</i>	to go
Word 3		<i>es</i>	it
Word 4		<i>dir</i>	you (informal)
Phrase 2	formal	<i>Wie geht es Ihnen?</i>	How are you?
Word 1		<i>wie</i>	how
Word 2		<i>geht</i>	to go
Word 3		<i>es</i>	it
Word 4		<i>Ihnen</i>	you (formal)
Phrase 3	informal	<i>Mir geht es gut.</i>	I'm fine.
Word 1		<i>Mir</i>	I
Word 2		<i>geht</i>	to go
Word 3		<i>es</i>	it
Word 4		<i>gut</i>	good
Phrase 4	formal	<i>Mir geht es nicht gut.</i>	I'm not well.
Word 1		<i>Mir</i>	I
Word 2		<i>geht</i>	to go
Word 3		<i>es</i>	it
Word 4		<i>nicht</i>	not

CULTURAL INSIGHT

To ask somebody about their well-being, we usually use the expression *Wie geht es dir?* which is "How are you?". A more polite way is *Wie geht es Ihnen?* *Ihnen* is the formal version of *Dir*. When you're talking to friends the shorter version *Wie geht's?* is mostly used.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #5

Making Apologies

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

5

GERMAN

1. Entschuldigen Sie
2. Entschuldige
3. Es tut mir leid.
4. Ich Entschuldige mich.

ENGLISH

1. Excuse me. / I'm sorry (formal)
2. Excuse me. / I'm sorry (informal)
3. I'm sorry.
4. I apology.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
entschuldigen	to excuse; [with sich] to apologize	verb
Sie	you (formal)	personal pronoun
Entschuldige	Excuse me (informal) , apology, excuse me, I'm sorry	expression
es	it	pronoun
tut	to do	

mir	me	personal pronoun; dative
ich	I	personal pronoun; nominative
mich	me	personal pronoun, accusative

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Entschuldigen Sie, das muss ein Missverständnis sein. Ich weiß, dass ich diesen Platz reserviert habe.</p> <p>Excuse me, this has to be a misunderstanding. I know that I reserved this seat.</p>	<p>Er rempelte mich an und ging weiter, ohne sich zu entschuldigen.</p> <p>He jostled me and continued on without apologizing.</p>
<p>Er wird sich öffentlich entschuldigen.</p> <p>He will apologize in public.</p>	<p>Entschuldigen Sie, dass ich zu spät komme; ich habe verschlafen.</p> <p>Please excuse my coming late; I overslept.</p>
<p>Haben Sie eine andere Kreditkarte?</p> <p>Do you have another credit card?</p>	<p>Sie sind Herr Smith.</p> <p>You are Mr. Smith.</p>
<p>Es ist jetzt halb zehn.</p> <p>It is now half past nine. (half ten)</p>	<p>Es ist 11 Uhr.</p> <p>It's 11:00.</p>
<p>Komm mit mir.</p> <p>Come with me.</p>	<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun!</p> <p>I was so busy last week!</p>
<p>Ich bin Lisa.</p> <p>I am Lisa.</p>	<p>Verstehst du mich, wenn ich auf Englisch spreche?</p> <p>Do you understand me when I speak on (in) English?</p>

Ist das Paket für mich? Is that package for me?	Habt ihr noch Platz für mich? Do you still have some space for me?
---	--

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to apologise yourself and say that you didn't do it on purpose and you are sorry.

	Register	German	English
Phrase 1	formal	<i>Entschuldigen</i> <i>Sie</i>	Excuse me. / I'm sorry
Word 1		<i>Entschuldigen</i>	to excuse
Word 2		<i>Sie</i>	you (formal)
Phrase 2	informal	<i>Entschuldige</i>	Excuse me. / I'm sorry
Word 1		<i>Entschuldige</i>	Excuse me.
Phrase 3		<i>Es tut mir leid.</i>	I'm sorry.
Word 1		<i>Es</i>	it
Word 2		<i>tut</i>	to do
Word 3		<i>Mir</i>	me
Word 4		<i>leid</i>	sorrow
Phrase 4		<i>Ich Entschuldige mich.</i>	I apology.
Word 1		<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2		<i>entschuldige</i>	apology, excuse me, I'm sorry

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Please remember that in Germany if we accidentally bump into someone, we don't say "I am sorry," *es tut mir leid*; instead we say *Entschuldigen Sie*, *Entschuldige* or *Entschuldigung* for both cases.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #6

Refusing Politely

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

6

GERMAN

1. Nein danke.
2. Danke, aber ich habe genug.
3. Vielen Dank, aber ich kann das nicht annehmen.
4. Vielen Dank, aber ich habe schon Pläne.

ENGLISH

1. No, thank you.
2. Thanks, but I've had enough.
3. Thanks a lot, but I can't accept this.
4. Thanks a lot, but I already have plans.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
Pläne	plans	noun
nein	no	expression; Yes is "Ja"
danke	thank you	interjection
aber	but	conjunction
habe	have, to have	
genug	enough	adverb
vielen Dank	many thanks	expression

ich kann das nicht	I cannot do	
annehmen	to accept	verb
ich habe	I have	
schon	already	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Nein, ich bin nicht aus Köln.</p> <p>No, I am not from Cologne.</p>	<p>Danke für die schönen Blumen.</p> <p>Thank you for the beautiful flowers.</p>
<p>Ich weiß, du bist beschäftigt. Aber kannst du meinen Anwalt anrufen?</p> <p>I know you are busy. But can you call my lawyer?</p>	<p>Aber ich wollte doch fernsehen!</p> <p>But I wanted to watch TV!</p>
<p>Hast du noch genug zu trinken?</p> <p>Do you still have enough to drink?</p>	<p>Vielen Dank für das tolle Geburtstagsgeschenk.</p> <p>Many thanks for this wonderful birthday present.</p>
<p>Vielen Dank für das Buch, das du mir geliehen hast.</p> <p>Many thanks for the book you lend me.</p>	<p>Ich nehme deine Entschuldigung an.</p> <p>I accept your apology.</p>
<p>Bist du schon müde?</p> <p>Are you tired already?</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to refuse politely an invite..

Register	German	English
----------	--------	---------

Phrase 1	informal	<i>Nein danke.</i>	No, thank you.
Word 1		<i>Nein</i>	No
Word 2		<i>danke</i>	Thank you
Phrase 2	informal	<i>Danke, aber ich habe genug.</i>	Thanks, but I've had enough.
Word 1		<i>Danke</i>	Thank you
Word 2		<i>aber</i>	but
Word 3		<i>ich</i>	I
Word 4		<i>habe</i>	have
Word 5		<i>genug</i>	enough
Phrase 3		<i>Vielen Dank, aber ich kann das nicht annehmen.</i>	Thanks a lot, but I can't accept this.
Word 1		<i>Vielen Dank</i>	Many thanks.
Word 2		<i>aber</i>	but
Word 3		<i>ich kann das nicht</i>	I cannot do
Word 4		<i>annehmen</i>	to accept
Phrase 4		<i>Vielen Dank, aber ich habe schon Pläne.</i>	Thanks a lot, but I already have plans.
Word 1		<i>Vielen Dank</i>	Many thanks.
Word 2		<i>aber</i>	but
Word 3		<i>ich habe</i>	I have
Word 4		<i>schon</i>	already

CULTURAL INSIGHT

When you're not sure if you can make something or not, you can say *Ich weiß nicht* which means "I don't know." Using this phrase is more polite than directly turning down their suggestions. *Ich weiß nicht* works in almost all situations, whether you don't know something or don't want to do something.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #7

Do You Speak English?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

7

GERMAN

1. Sprichst Du Englisch?
2. Sprechen Sie Englisch?
3. Ja, ein bisschen.
4. Nein, ich spreche nicht Englisch

ENGLISH

1. Do you speak English? (informal)
2. Do you speak English? (formal)
3. Yes, a little.
4. No, I don't speak English.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
Sprichst	to speak		
du	you (informal)	personal pronoun, nominative	
Englisch	English language	noun	neuter
sprechen	to speak	verb	

Sie	you (formal)	personal pronoun; Spelled with a capital letter in order to express politeness also in writing.
ja	yes	adverb
ein	a, an	article
bisschen	a little	pronoun
nein	no	expression; Yes is "Ja"
ich	I	personal pronoun; nominative
nicht	not	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Du bist gut. You are good.</p>	<p>Bist du dir sicher? Are you sure?</p>
<p>Können Sie bitte mit mir Englisch sprechen? Could you please speak English with me?</p>	<p>Sprichst du Englisch? Do you speak English?</p>
<p>Entschuldigung, ich spreche kein Deutsch. Sorry, I don't speak German.</p>	<p>Ich spreche Deutsch. I speak German.</p>
<p>Sie sind nett. You are nice.</p>	<p>Na schön, du hast ja Recht. Fair enough, you're right. (In the sense of "I'm giving in.")</p>

<p>Ja, das stimmt. Yes, that's right.</p>	<p>Heute ist ein guter Tag. Today is a good day.</p>
<p>Das war nur ein Witz. That was just a joke.</p>	<p>Mein Auto ist ein bisschen dreckig. My car is a little dirty.</p>
<p>Ich spreche nur ein bisschen Deutsch. I only speak a little German.</p>	<p>Nein, ich bin nicht aus Köln. No, I am not from Cologne.</p>
<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun! I was so busy last week!</p>	<p>Ich bin Lisa. I am Lisa.</p>
<p>Das habe ich nicht gesagt! I didn't say that!</p>	<p>Du bist nicht mein Vater! You aren't my father!</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and answer the question.

	Register	German	English
Phrase 1	informal	<i>Sprichst Du Englisch?</i>	Do you speak English?
Word 1		<i>Sprichst</i>	to speak
Word 2		<i>Du</i>	you (informal)
Word 3		<i>Englisch</i>	English
Phrase 2	formal	<i>Sprechen Sie Englisch?</i>	Do you speak English?
Word 1		<i>Sprechen</i>	to speak

Word 2	<i>Sie</i>	you (formal)
Word 3	<i>Englisch</i>	English
Phrase 3	<i>Ja, ein bisschen.</i>	Yes, a little.
Word 1	<i>Ja</i>	yes
Word 2	<i>ein</i>	a
Word 3	<i>bisschen</i>	little
Phrase 4	<i>Nein, ich spreche nicht Englisch</i>	No, I don't speak English.
Word 1	<i>Nein</i>	No
Word 2	<i>ich</i>	I
Word 3	<i>spreche</i>	to speak
Word 4	<i>nicht</i>	not

CULTURAL INSIGHT

For those of you who are not only English speakers, you can obviously use this question with any language you need. German people study other European languages at school, so maybe you will get lucky! Just substitute *Englisch* with...

Italienisch for Italian.

Russisch for Russian.

Spanisch for Spanish.

Französisch for French.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #8 Talking About Your Age

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

8

GERMAN

1. Wie alt bist du?
2. Wie alt sind Sie?
3. Ich bin achtzehn.
4. Ich bin fünfundzwanzig.

ENGLISH

1. How old are you? (informal)
2. How old are you? (formal)
3. I am 18.
4. I am 25.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
wie	how	pronoun
alt	old	adjective
bist	are	
du	you (informal)	personal pronoun, nominative
sind	are	
Sie	you (formal)	personal pronoun

ich	I	personal pronoun; nominative
bin	am	conjugated verb
achtzehn	eighteen	numeral
fünfundzwanzig	twenty-five	number

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Wie teuer sind die Äpfel? How much are the apples?</p>	<p>Wie geht es Ihnen heute? How are you today?</p>
<p>Der Mann ist sehr alt. The man is very old.</p>	<p>Dieses Gebäude ist 100 Jahre alt. This building is 100 years old.</p>
<p>Du bist gut. You are good.</p>	<p>Bist du dir sicher? Are you sure?</p>
<p>Haben Sie eine andere Kreditkarte? Do you have another credit card?</p>	<p>Sie sind Herr Smith. You are Mr. Smith.</p>
<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun! I was so busy last week!</p>	<p>Ich bin Lisa. I am Lisa.</p>
<p>Ich bin zehn Jahre alt. I am ten years old.</p>	<p>Ich bin Arzt. I am a doctor.</p>
<p>Sophie ist gerade achtzehn geworden. Sophie just turned eighteen.</p>	<p>Fünfundzwanzig Jahre sind ein Viertel eines Jahrhunderts. Twenty-five years are a quarter of a century.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask someone's age and to say yours.

	Register	German	English
Phrase 1	informal	<i>Wie alt bist du?</i>	How old are you?
Word 1		<i>wie</i>	how
Word 2		<i>alt</i>	old
Word 3		<i>bist</i>	are
Word 4		<i>du</i>	you (informal)
Phrase 2	formal	<i>Wie alt sind Sie?</i>	How old are you?
Word 1		<i>wie</i>	how
Word 2		<i>alt</i>	old
Word 3		<i>sind</i>	are
Word 4		<i>Sie</i>	you (formal)
Phrase 3		<i>Ich bin achtzehn.</i>	I am 18.
Word 1		<i>ich</i>	I
Word 2		<i>bin</i>	am
Word 3		<i>achtzehn</i>	eighteen
Phrase 4		<i>Ich bin fünfundzwanzig.</i>	I am 25.
Word 1		<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2		<i>bin</i>	am
Word 3		<i>fünfundzwanzig</i>	twenty-five

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If you are estimating somebody's age, you say:

"Du bist um die dreißig." "You're around 30".

"Du bist um die fünfundzwanzig", You're around 25 and so on.

It's okay if you overestimate the other person's age, but try to get as close as you can!

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #9

Using Adjectives

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

9

GERMAN

1. Er ist ein lustiger Mann. (masculine noun)
2. Sie ist eine lustige Frau. (feminine noun)
3. Das ist ein lustiges Spiel. (neutral singular)
4. Das ist ein tolles Spiel. (neutral singular)

ENGLISH

1. He's a funny man.
2. She's a funny woman.
3. It is a funny game.
4. It is a great game.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
tolles	great		
er	he	personal pronoun; also used in the sense of „it“ when the noun is masculine!	
ist	is	conjugated verb	
ein	a, an	article	

lustiger	funny	adjective	masculine
Mann	man	noun	masculine
sie	she, they	personal pronoun	
eine	a, an	article	
Frau	Ms., woman	noun	feminine
Das	It		
Spiel	game, match	noun; neuter, das	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Er hat die Hühner diesen Morgen gefüttert.</p> <p>He fed the chickens this morning.</p>	<p>Er steht da drüben.</p> <p>He stands over there.</p>
<p>Sie ist süß.</p> <p>She is cute.</p>	<p>Das ist Lisa.</p> <p>That's Lisa.</p>
<p>Heute ist ein guter Tag.</p> <p>Today is a good day.</p>	<p>Das war nur ein Witz.</p> <p>That was just a joke.</p>
<p>Der Mann ist sehr alt.</p> <p>The man is very old.</p>	<p>Mein Mann arbeitet hier.</p> <p>My husband works here.</p>
<p>Sie ist so dünn.</p> <p>She is so thin.</p>	<p>Die Frau arbeitet im Büro.</p> <p>The woman is working at the office.</p>
<p>Frau Smith</p> <p>Ms. Smith.</p>	<p>Ich liebe Geschicklichkeitsspiele.</p> <p>I love games where you have to be nimble.</p>

Kommst du auch mit zum Spiel, um unsere Schulmannschaft anzufeuern?

Are you also coming along to the match, to cheer on our school team?

Der Spieler hat das Kartenspiel verloren.

The player lost the card game.

Die deutsche Fußballnationalmannschaft begeisterte durch ein hervorragendes Spiel.

The German national soccer team enthused [people] with an excellent match.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to use adjectives in simple sentences.

	<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>
Phrase 1	<i>Er ist ein lustiger Mann. (masculine noun)</i>	He's a funny man.
Word 1	<i>Er</i>	he
Word 2	<i>ist</i>	is
Word 3	<i>ein</i>	a,an
Word 4	<i>lustiger</i>	funny
Word 5	<i>Mann</i>	man
Phrase 2	<i>Sie ist eine lustige Frau. (feminine noun)</i>	She's a funny woman.
Word 1	<i>Sie</i>	She
Word 2	<i>ist</i>	is
Word 3	<i>eine</i>	a,an

Word 4	<i>lustige</i>	funny
Word 5	<i>Frau</i>	woman
Phrase 3	<i>Das ist ein lustiges Spiel. (neutral singular)</i>	It is a funny game.
Word 1	<i>Das</i>	It
Word 2	<i>ist</i>	is
Word 3	<i>ein</i>	a, an
Word 4	<i>lustiges</i>	funny
Word 5	<i>Spiel</i>	game
Phrase 4	<i>Das ist ein tolles Spiel. (neutral singular)</i>	It is a great game.
Word 1	<i>Das</i>	It
Word 2	<i>ist</i>	is
Word 3	<i>ein</i>	a, an
Word 4	<i>tolles</i>	great, nice

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If you want to insist on an adjective in German, you can use the words *sehr* and *wirklich* before the adjective, such as *sehr schön*, which is "very beautiful" or *wirklich lecker* meaning "really delicious."

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #10

Asking How Much

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

10

GERMAN

1. Wie viel kostet das?
2. Wie viel kostet dieser Hut? (masculine noun)
3. Wie viel kostet diese Hose? (feminine noun)
4. Wie viel kostet dieses Buch? (neuter noun)

ENGLISH

1. How much is it?
2. How much is this hat?
3. How much is this pair of pants?
4. How much is this book?

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
wie	how	pronoun	
viel	much, a lot	adjective; adverb	
kostet	to cost		
das	that		
viel	much	adjective; adverb	
dieser	this		

Hut	hat	noun	masculine
Hose	trousers	noun; feminine, die	
dieses	this	demonstrative pronoun	
Buch	book	noun	neutral

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Wie teuer sind die Äpfel? How much are the apples?</p>	<p>Wie geht es Ihnen heute? How are you today?</p>
<p>Die Autos machen viel Lärm. The cars are making a lot of noise.</p>	<p>Viele Studenten sind arm. Many students are poor.</p>
<p>Das ist ein wirklich sehr süßes Baby. That really is a very cute baby.</p>	<p>Diese Stadt ist sehr berühmt. This city is very famous.</p>
<p>Dieser Fisch ist sehr alt. This fish is really old.</p>	<p>Ich mag dieses Lied. I like this song.</p>
<p>Ich lese gerade ein gutes Buch. I am reading a good book at the moment.</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask how much something costs.

	<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>
Phrase 1	<i>Wie viel kostet das?</i>	How much is it?

Word 1	<i>Wie</i>	how
Word 2	<i>viel</i>	much
Word 3	<i>kostet</i>	to cost
Word 4	<i>das</i>	that
Phrase 2	<i>Wie viel kostet dieser Hut? (masculine noun)</i>	How much is this hat?
Word 1	<i>Wie</i>	how
Word 2	<i>viel</i>	much
Word 3	<i>kostet</i>	to cost
Word 4	<i>dieser</i>	this
Word 5	<i>Hut</i>	hat
Phrase 3	<i>Wie viel kostet diese Hose? (feminine noun)</i>	How much is this pair of pants?
Word 1	<i>Wie</i>	how
Word 2	<i>viel</i>	much
Word 3	<i>kostet</i>	to cost
Word 4	<i>diese</i>	this
Word 5	<i>Hose</i>	trousers
Phrase 4	<i>Wie viel kostet dieses Buch? (neuter noun)</i>	How much is this book?
Word 1	<i>Wie</i>	how
Word 2	<i>viel</i>	much
Word 3	<i>kostet</i>	to cost
Word 4	<i>dieses</i>	this

CULTURAL INSIGHT

A quicker way to ask "How much?" is *Was kostet das?* Which literally means "How much does it cost?" Even when you ask for a beer at the counter of a bar, you can ask the cashier *Was kostet ein Bier?* meaning "How much does a beer cost?"

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #11

Master the Currency

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

11

GERMAN

1. ein euro
2. zehn euro
3. fünfundfünfzig euro und zehn cent
4. Sechszwanzig Euro und siebenzig Cent.

ENGLISH

1. One euro
2. Ten euro
3. Fifty-five euro and ten cents
4. Twenty-six euro and seventy cents.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
ein	one	number
Euro	euro(s)	noun; masculine, der
zehn	ten (10)	numeral
fünfundfünfzig	fifty-five	number
und	and	conjunction
cent	cents	noun; masculine, der
Sechszwanzig	twenty-six	number

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Der Wechselkurs des Yen zum Euro ist heute 10% niedriger.</p> <p>The exchange rate of the yen into the euro went down by 10% today.</p>	<p>Ich bin zehn Jahre alt.</p> <p>I am ten years old.</p>
<p>Thomas und Lisa.</p> <p>Thomas and Lisa.</p>	<p>Der Ballon fliegt 70 Meter hoch in der Luft.</p> <p>The balloon is 70 meters high in the air.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to read prices.

	<i>German</i>	English
Phrase 1	<i>ein euro</i>	One euro
Word 1	<i>ein</i>	one
Word 2	<i>euro</i>	euro
Phrase 2	<i>zehn euro</i>	Ten euro
Word 1	<i>zehn</i>	ten
Word 2	<i>euro</i>	euro
Phrase 3	<i>fünfundfünfzig euro und zehn cent</i>	Fifty-five euro and ten cents
Word 1	<i>fünfundfünfzig</i>	fifty-five
Word 2	<i>euro</i>	euro

Word 3	<i>und</i>	and
Word 4	<i>zehn</i>	ten
Word 5	<i>cent</i>	cents
Phrase 4	<i>Sechszwanzig Euro und siebenzig Cent.</i>	Twenty-six euro and seventy cents.
Word 1	<i>Sechszwanzig</i>	twenty-six
Word 2	<i>euro</i>	euro
Word 3	<i>und</i>	and
Word 4	<i>siebenzig</i>	seventy

CULTURAL INSIGHT

The euro has been the German currency since 2002, when most countries of the European Union adopted it. Before the Euro, the currency in Germany was the D-Mark, the Deutsche Mark.

Even though many countries use the Euro, the backside of the coin still shows the country of origin. So you'll find some coins from Germany as well as from France or Italy and you can use them everywhere.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #12

What Are You Doing?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

12

GERMAN

1. Was machst du?
2. Was machen Sie?
3. Ich mache meine Hausaufgaben
4. Ich koche gerade!

ENGLISH

1. What are you doing? (informal)
2. What are you doing? (formal)
3. I'm doing homework
4. I'm cooking now.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
was	what	pronoun	
machst	to do		
du	you (informal)	personal pronoun, nominative	
machen	to make, to do	verb	
Sie	you (formal)	personal pronoun	

ich	I	personal pronoun; nominative	
meine	my		
Hausaufgaben	homework	noun	feminine
kochen	to cook	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Was ist das Thema?</p> <p>What is the topic?</p>	<p>Was ist das?</p> <p>What is this?</p>
<p>Du bist gut.</p> <p>You are good.</p>	<p>Bist du dir sicher?</p> <p>Are you sure?</p>
<p>Ich mache Kaffee.</p> <p>I am making coffee.</p>	<p>Haben Sie eine andere Kreditkarte?</p> <p>Do you have another credit card?</p>
<p>Sie sind Herr Smith.</p> <p>You are Mr. Smith.</p>	<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun!</p> <p>I was so busy last week!</p>
<p>Ich bin Lisa.</p> <p>I am Lisa.</p>	<p>Mist! Ich habe meine Hausaufgaben vergessen!</p> <p>Drats! I forgot my homework!</p>
<p>Immer wenn ich zu den Feiertagen heim komme, kocht meine Mutter mein Lieblingsessen.</p> <p>My mother always cooks my favorite meal when I come home for the holidays.</p>	<p>Was kochst du uns heute?</p> <p>What are you cooking for us today?</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask what someone is doing.

	Register	German	English
Phrase 1	informal	<i>Was machst du?</i>	What are you doing?
Word 1		<i>was</i>	what
Word 2		<i>machst</i>	to do
Word 3		<i>du</i>	you (informal)
Phrase 2	formal	<i>Was machen Sie?</i>	What are you doing?
Word 1		<i>was</i>	what
Word 2		<i>machen</i>	to do
Word 3		<i>Sie</i>	you (formal)
Phrase 3		<i>Ich mache meine Hausaufgaben</i>	I'm doing homework
Word 1		<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2		<i>mache</i>	to do
Word 3		<i>meine</i>	my
Word 4		<i>Hausaufgaben</i>	homework
Phrase 4		<i>Ich koche gerade!</i>	I'm cooking now.
Word 1		<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2		<i>koche</i>	to cook
Word 3		<i>gerade</i>	straight, just, just now, right now

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In some situations, the question *Was machst du?* can also mean more generally "What do you do?" or "What is your job?"

This is a really common question you can ask, or that you might be asked the first time you meet someone.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #13

Who Is It?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

13

GERMAN

1. Wer ist es?
2. Wer ist das?
3. Das bin ich.
4. Das ist mein Freund.

ENGLISH

1. Who is it?
2. Who is that?
3. That's me.
4. That is my friend.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
wer	who	pronoun	
ist	is	conjugated verb	
es	it	pronoun	
das	that		
bin	am	conjugated verb	
ich	I	personal pronoun; nominative	

meine	my		
Freund	friend	noun	masculine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Wer ist das? Who is that?</p>	<p>Sie ist süß. She is cute.</p>
<p>Das ist Lisa. That's Lisa.</p>	<p>Es ist jetzt halb zehn. It is now half past nine. (half ten)</p>
<p>Es ist 11 Uhr. It's 11:00.</p>	<p>Das ist ein wirklich sehr süßes Baby. That really is a very cute baby.</p>
<p>Ich bin zehn Jahre alt. I am ten years old.</p>	<p>Ich bin Arzt. I am a doctor.</p>
<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun! I was so busy last week!</p>	<p>Ich bin Lisa. I am Lisa.</p>
<p>Mein bester Freund und ich gehen überall gemeinsam hin. My best friend and I go everywhere together.</p>	<p>Ich liebe es, mit Freunden Eislaufen zu gehen. I love to go ice-skating with friends.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask who it is.

<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>
---------------	----------------

Phrase 1	<i>Wer ist es?</i>	Who is it?
Word 1	<i>wer</i>	who
Word 2	<i>ist</i>	is
Word 3	<i>es</i>	it
Phrase 2	<i>Wer ist das?</i>	Who is that?
Word 1	<i>wer</i>	who
Word 2	<i>ist</i>	is
Word 3	<i>das</i>	that
Phrase 3	<i>Das bin ich.</i>	That's me.
Word 1	<i>Das</i>	that
Word 2	<i>bin</i>	am
Word 3	<i>ich</i>	I
Phrase 4	<i>Das ist mein Freund.</i>	That is my friend.
Word 1	<i>Das</i>	that
Word 2	<i>ist</i>	is
Word 3	<i>mein</i>	my
Word 4	<i>Freund</i>	friend

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If someone that you didn't expect is knocking at your door in Germany, the common question you can ask is *Wer ist da?* before opening the door. This literally means "Who is there?"

The very casual way to ask this question is *Wer?* which is much more informal but can be used, but only if your tone is cheerful. Otherwise, it will sound a bit rude!

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #14 When Are You Leaving?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

14

GERMAN

1. Wann gehst du?
2. Wann gehen Sie?
3. Ich gehe in zwei Stunden.
4. Ich gehe nächste Woche.

ENGLISH

1. When are you leaving? (informal)
2. When are you leaving? (formal)
3. I leave in two hours.
4. I leave next week.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
wann	when	adverb	
gehst	to go		
du	you (informal)	personal pronoun, nominative	
gehen	to go, to walk	verb	
Sie	you (formal)	personal pronoun	
in	in	preposition	

zwei	two (2)	numeral	
Stunden	hours	noun	
nächste	next		
Woche	week	noun	feminine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Wann kommst du? When will you come (over)?</p>	<p>Du bist gut. You are good.</p>
<p>Bist du dir sicher? Are you sure?</p>	<p>Ich bin zum Tierkrankenhaus gegangen. I went to the animal hospital.</p>
<p>Ich gehe nach Amerika. I go to America.</p>	<p>Lass uns ins Kino gehen. Let's go to the movies.</p>
<p>Haben Sie eine andere Kreditkarte? Do you have another credit card?</p>	<p>Sie sind Herr Smith. You are Mr. Smith.</p>
<p>Ist Bier teuer in Deutschland? Is beer expensive in Germany?</p>	<p>Der Schlüssel ist in meiner Hosentasche. The key is in my pants pocket.</p>
<p>Möchtest du ein oder zwei Brötchen? Do you want one or two rolls?</p>	<p>Michaela hat diese Woche Geburtstag. It's Michaela's birthday this week.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask when someone is leaving.

	Register	German	English
Phrase 1	informal	<i>Wann gehst du?</i>	When are you leaving?
Word 1		<i>Wann</i>	when
Word 2		<i>gehst</i>	to go
Word 3		<i>du</i>	you (informal)
Phrase 2	formal	<i>Wann gehen Sie?</i>	When are you leaving?
Word 1		<i>Wann</i>	when
Word 2		<i>gehen</i>	to go
Word 3		<i>Sie</i>	you (formal)
Phrase 3		<i>Ich gehe in zwei Stunden.</i>	I leave in two hours.
Word 1		<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2		<i>gehe</i>	to go
Word 3		<i>in</i>	in
Word 4		<i>zwei</i>	two
Word 5		<i>Stunden</i>	hours
Phrase 4		<i>Ich gehe nächste Woche.</i>	I leave next week.
Word 1		<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2		<i>gehe</i>	to go
Word 3		<i>nächste</i>	next
Word 4		<i>woche</i>	week

CULTURAL INSIGHT

To ask how long an action has been taking place in German, we could say *Seit wann*, but there is another very simple way to do it!

You just have to use the pattern *Wie lange?* As in *Wie lange hast du gewartet?* That is "How long have you been waiting?"

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #15

Where Are You?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

15

GERMAN

1. Wo bist du?
2. Wo sind Sie?
3. Ich bin im Büro.
4. Ich bin in einem Geschäft.

ENGLISH

1. Where are you? (informal)
2. Where are you? (formal)
3. I'm at the office.
4. I'm in a store.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
wo	where	adverb	
bist	are, to be	verb	
du	you	personal pronoun, nominative	
Sie	you (formal)	personal pronoun	
ich	I	personal pronoun; nominative	

bin	am	conjugated verb	
im	in the		
Büro	office	noun	neutral
in	in	preposition	
einem	a		
Geschäft	store, shop	noun; neuter, das	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Wo wirst du morgen Abend hingehen?</p> <p>Where are you going tomorrow night?</p>	<p>Entschuldigen Sie bitte, wo finde ich das Deutsche Museum?</p> <p>Excuse me please, where can I find the German Museum?</p>
<p>Wo wohnst du jetzt?</p> <p>Where do you live now?</p>	<p>Haben Sie eine andere Kreditkarte?</p> <p>Do you have another credit card?</p>
<p>Sie sind Herr Smith.</p> <p>You are Mr. Smith.</p>	<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun!</p> <p>I was so busy last week!</p>
<p>Ich bin Lisa.</p> <p>I am Lisa.</p>	<p>Ich bin zehn Jahre alt.</p> <p>I am ten years old.</p>
<p>Ich bin Arzt.</p> <p>I am a doctor.</p>	<p>Mein Büro befindet sich im zweiten Stock.</p> <p>My office is on the second floor.</p>

<p>Unser Büro ist mitten in der Stadt. Our office is in the middle of the city.</p>	<p>Könnten Sie zu unserem Büro kommen, um den Vertrag zu unterschreiben? Could you come to our office to sign the contract?</p>
<p>Ich wohne in der Nähe meines Büros. I live near my office.</p>	<p>Ab 8 Uhr bin ich im Büro. I'm at the office starting at 8 o'clock.</p>
<p>Ist Bier teuer in Deutschland? Is beer expensive in Germany?</p>	<p>Der Schlüssel ist in meiner Hosentasche. The key is in my pants pocket.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask where someone is going.

	Register	German	English
Phrase 1	informal	<i>Wo bist du?</i>	Where are you?
Word 1		<i>Wo</i>	where
Word 2		<i>bist</i>	are, to be
Word 3		<i>du</i>	you
Phrase 2	formal	<i>Wo sind Sie?</i>	Where are you?
Word 1		<i>Wo</i>	where
Word 2		<i>sind</i>	are
Word 3		<i>Sie</i>	you (formal)
Phrase 3		<i>Ich bin im Büro.</i>	I'm at the office.

Word 1	<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2	<i>bin</i>	am
Word 3	<i>im</i>	in the
Word 4	<i>Büro</i>	office
Phrase 4	<i>Ich bin in einem Geschäft.</i>	I'm in a store.
Word 1	<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2	<i>bin</i>	am
Word 3	<i>in</i>	in
Word 4	<i>einem</i>	a

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Using the verb *sein*, you can create a convenient question to use when you are lost in the street. For example, *Ich weiß nicht wo ich bin, können Sie mir bitte helfen?* means "I don't know where I am, can you help me please?"

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #16

Asking for Directions

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

16

GERMAN

1. Wie komme ich zum Bahnhof?
2. Gehen Sie geradeaus.
3. Rechts abbiegen.
4. Links abbiegen.

ENGLISH

1. How do I get to the station?
2. Go straight.
3. Turn right.
4. Turn left.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
wie	how	pronoun	
kommen	to come	verb	
ich	I	personal pronoun; nominative	
zum	to the		
Bahnhof	train station	noun	masculine
gehen	to go, to walk	verb	

Sie	you (formal)	personal pronoun
geradeaus	straight ahead	adverb
rechts	right, on the right	adverb
abbiegen	to turn (by car)	verb
links	left, on the left	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Wie teuer sind die Äpfel? How much are the apples?</p>	<p>Wie geht es Ihnen heute? How are you today?</p>
<p>Ich weiß, dass du nicht willst, dass ich zur Feier komme. I know you don't want me to come to the party.</p>	<p>Ich würde gerne morgen wiederkommen, wenn möglich. I would like to come again tomorrow, if possible.</p>
<p>Lisa kommt heute nicht. Lisa isn't coming today.</p>	<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun! I was so busy last week!</p>
<p>Ich bin Lisa. I am Lisa.</p>	<p>Der Zug hält auch am Hauptbahnhof. The train also stops at the central station.</p>
<p>Ich warte vor dem Bahnhof auf dich. I'm waiting for you in front of the train station.</p>	<p>Ich bin zum Tierkrankenhaus gegangen. I went to the animal hospital.</p>
<p>Ich gehe nach Amerika. I go to America.</p>	<p>Lass uns ins Kino gehen. Let's go to the movies.</p>

<p>Haben Sie eine andere Kreditkarte? Do you have another credit card?</p>	<p>Sie sind Herr Smith. You are Mr. Smith.</p>
<p>Dann gehen Sie immer geradeaus. Then always go straight ahead.</p>	<p>Rechts sehen Sie das Geschichtsmuseum. On your right you see the history museum.</p>
<p>An der Ampel biegen Sie rechts ab. Turn right at the traffic light.</p>	<p>Wenn du nach links gehst dann siehst du auf der linken Seite das Büro. "When you go to the left you see on the left side the office."</p>

Links sehen Sie die berühmte Kathedrale und rechts das Geschichtsmuseum.

On the left you see the famous cathedral and on the right the museum of history.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and understand basic directions.

	<i>German</i>	English
Phrase 1	<i>Wie komme ich zum Bahnhof?</i>	How do I get to the station?
Word 1	<i>wie</i>	how
Word 2	<i>komme</i>	to come
Word 3	<i>ich</i>	I
Word 4	<i>zum</i>	to the
Word 5	<i>Bahnhof</i>	Train station
Phrase 2	<i>Gehen Sie geradeaus.</i>	Go straight.

Word 1	<i>Gehen</i>	to go, to walk
Word 2	<i>Sie</i>	you (formal)
Word 3	<i>geradeaus</i>	straight ahead
Phrase 3	<i>Rechts abbiegen.</i>	Turn right.
Word 1	<i>Rechts</i>	right, on the right
Word 2	<i>abbiegen</i>	to turn (by car)
Phrase 4	<i>Links abbiegen.</i>	Turn left.
Word 1	<i>Links</i>	left, on the left
Word 2	<i>abbiegen</i>	to turn (by car)

CULTURAL INSIGHT

German streets, like other European streets, tend to be long, narrow and curvy. When walking down a long street, you may notice the name of that street changes. Street names don't always remain constant, so be careful when asking about a location or address! When looking for directions to a place, it is probably best to ask a local, because they will be most familiar with the street system.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #17

Why Are You Late?

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 5 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

17

GERMAN

1. Warum bist du zu spät?
2. Ich habe den Zug verpasst.
3. Warum hast du das gekauft?
4. Um ein Geschenk zu kaufen.

ENGLISH

1. Why are you late? (informal)
2. I missed the train.
3. Why did you buy this? (informal)
4. To buy a gift.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
warum	why	question word	
bist	are		
du	you (informal)	personal pronoun, nominative	
zu	too (much)	adverb / preposition	
spät	late	adjective	

ich	I	personal pronoun; nominative	
habe	have, to have		
den	the	article	
Zug	train	noun	masculine
verpasst	missed, lost		
hast	to have		
das	that		
gekauft	bought		
um	in order to	conjunction	
ein	a, an	article	
Geschenk	present, gift	noun	neuter
kaufen	to buy	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Warum dauert das so lange? Why is this taking so long?</p>	<p>Du bist gut. You are good.</p>
<p>Bist du dir sicher? Are you sure?</p>	<p>Das ist zu teuer. That is too expensive.</p>
<p>Es war zu spät für mich, um meine schlechten Gewohnheiten zu verändern. It was too late for me to change my bad habits.</p>	<p>Du kommst immer zu spät zur Arbeit. You are always late for work.</p>

<p>Er kommt zu spät. He is coming (arriving) too late.</p>	<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun! I was so busy last week!</p>
<p>Ich bin Lisa. I am Lisa.</p>	<p>Der nächste Zug nach London wird in dreißig Minuten ankommen. The next train to London will arrive in thirty minutes.</p>
<p>Viele Züge der Deutschen Bahn haben Verspätung. Many Deutsche Bahn trains are delayed.</p>	<p>Wenn ich den Zug nicht verpasst hätte, wäre ich jetzt schon in München! If I hadn't missed the train, I would now already be in Munich!</p>
<p>Wann kommt dein Zug an? When does your train arrive?</p>	<p>Der Zug ist am Wochenende immer voll. The train is always full on the weekends.</p>
<p>Das ist ein wirklich sehr süßes Baby. That really is a very cute baby.</p>	<p>Wie spät müssen wir losfahren, um um 15 Uhr in Düsseldorf zu sein? What time do we need to get going in order to be in Düsseldorf by 3pm?</p>
<p>Heute ist ein guter Tag. Today is a good day.</p>	<p>Das war nur ein Witz. That was just a joke.</p>
<p>Oh, was für ein schönes Geschenk! Das wäre doch nicht notwendig gewesen! Oh, what a great present! That wouldn't have been necessary!</p>	<p>Danke für das Geschenk. Thanks for the present.</p>

<p>Er wird für seinen Hund ein Haus neben dem Fluss kaufen.</p> <p>He will buy a house next to the river for his dog.</p>	<p>Sie müssen drei kaufen, wenn Sie den Rabatt kriegen möchten.</p> <p>You have to buy three if you want to get the discount.</p>
<p>Warum kaufst du nächstes Mal nicht mehr Lebensmittel?</p> <p>Why don't you buy more groceries next time?</p>	<p>Wenn ich hungrig bin, kaufe ich immer zu viele Lebensmittel.</p> <p>I always buy too many groceries when I am hungry.</p>
<p>Er möchte ein schnelles Auto kaufen.</p> <p>He wants to buy a fast car.</p>	<p>Wir sind uns nicht einig, welches Haus wir kaufen wollen.</p> <p>We haven't reached an agreement about which house we want to buy.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask why.

	Register	German	English
Phrase 1	informal	<i>Warum bist du zu spät?</i>	Why are you late?
Word 1		<i>Warum</i>	why
Word 2		<i>bist</i>	are
Word 3		<i>du</i>	you (informal)
Word 4		<i>zu</i>	too (much)
Word 5		<i>spät</i>	late
Phrase 2	informal	<i>Ich habe den Zug verpasst.</i>	I missed the train.

Word 1		<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2		<i>habe</i>	to have
Word 3		<i>den</i>	the
Word 4		<i>Zug</i>	train
Word 5		<i>verpasst</i>	missed, lost
Phrase 3	informal	<i>Warum hast du das gekauft?</i>	Why did you buy this?
Word 1		<i>Warum</i>	why
Word 2		<i>hast</i>	to have
Word 3		<i>du</i>	you
Word 4		<i>das</i>	that
Word 5		<i>gekauft</i>	bought
Phrase 4		<i>Um ein Geschenk zu kaufen.</i>	To buy a gift.
Word 1		<i>um</i>	in order to
Word 2		<i>ein</i>	a, an
Word 3		<i>Geschenk</i>	present, gift
Word 4		<i>zu</i>	too (much)

CULTURAL INSIGHT

A famous expression in German is *Warum nicht?* which means "Why not?" just like in English. You can use this phrase to accept a proposition if you agree but are not really keen on doing so, or if the question was posed spontaneously. For example, if a friend asks you

suddenly "How about we go to the cinema tonight? You can answer *Warum nicht?* which means, "Why not?"

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #18 Talking About Possession

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

18

GERMAN

1. Hast du ein Auto?
2. Haben Sie ein Auto?
3. Ja, Ich habe ein Auto.
4. Ich habe einen roten Stift.

ENGLISH

1. Do you have a car? (informal)
2. Do you have a car? (formal)
3. Yes, I have a car.
4. I have a red pen.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
Hast du	do you have (informal)		
ein	a, an	article	
Auto	car	noun	neutral
Haben Sie	do you have (formal)		
ja	yes	adverb	
habe	have, to have		

einen	one	
roten	red	adjective
Stift	pen, pencil, crayon	noun; masculine, der

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Heute ist ein guter Tag.</p> <p>Today is a good day.</p>	<p>Das war nur ein Witz.</p> <p>That was just a joke.</p>
<p>Das Auto ist das Lieblingsspielzeug des Mannes in Deutschland.</p> <p>The car is a man's favorite toy in Germany.</p>	<p>Mein Auto ist ein bisschen dreckig.</p> <p>My car is a little dirty.</p>
<p>Na schön, du hast ja Recht.</p> <p>Fair enough, you're right. (In the sense of "I'm giving in.")</p>	<p>Ja, das stimmt.</p> <p>Yes, that's right.</p>
<p>Ich möchte einen Kaffee.</p> <p>I would like a coffee.</p>	<p>Füllen Sie das Formular mit einem Kugelschreiber aus, nicht mit einem Bleistift.</p> <p>Fill out the form with a pen, not with a pencil.</p>

Lutsch nicht an deinem Bleistift, das ist ungesund.

Don't suck on your pencil, that's bad for your health.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to talk about possession.

Register	German	English
----------	--------	---------

Phrase 1	informal	<i>Hast du ein Auto?</i>	Do you have a car?
Word 1		<i>Hast du</i>	do you have (informal)
Word 2		<i>ein</i>	a, an
Word 3		<i>Auto</i>	car
Phrase 2	formal	<i>Haben Sie ein Auto?</i>	Do you have a car?
Word 1		<i>Haben Sie</i>	do you have (formal)
Word 2		<i>ein</i>	a, an
Word 3		<i>Auto</i>	car
Phrase 3		<i>Ja, Ich habe ein Auto.</i>	Yes, I have a car.
Word 1		<i>Ja</i>	yes
Word 2		<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 3		<i>habe</i>	have
Word 4		<i>ein</i>	a
Word 5		<i>Auto</i>	car
Phrase 4		<i>Ich habe einen roten Stift.</i>	I have a red pen.
Word 1		<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2		<i>habe</i>	to have
Word 3		<i>einen</i>	one
Word 4		<i>roten</i>	red

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If you want to sound really natural when asking if someone has something, you can use the word *oder*. Here's an example.

Du hast einen Hund, oder? This literally means "You have a dog, or..?"

You just add the word *oder* after the sentence. It makes the whole sentence sound like a question.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #19

Going Without

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

19

GERMAN

1. Ich habe kein Auto.
2. Ich habe keine Zeit.
3. Ich weiß es nicht.
4. Ich denke nicht.

ENGLISH

1. I don't have a car.
2. I don't have time.
3. I don't know.
4. I don't think so.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
denke	think		
ich	I	personal pronoun; nominative	
habe	have, to have		
kein	not any, no	adverb	
Auto	car	noun	neutral
Zeit	time	noun	feminine

weiß	know	noun
es	it	pronoun
nicht	not	adverb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun!</p> <p>I was so busy last week!</p>	<p>Ich bin Lisa.</p> <p>I am Lisa.</p>
<p>Ich trinke kein Bier.</p> <p>I don't drink any beer.</p>	<p>Das Auto ist das Lieblingsspielzeug des Mannes in Deutschland.</p> <p>The car is a man's favorite toy in Germany.</p>
<p>Mein Auto ist ein bisschen dreckig.</p> <p>My car is a little dirty.</p>	<p>Die Zeiten ändern sich.</p> <p>Times change.</p>
<p>Ich habe jetzt Zeit.</p> <p>I have time now.</p>	<p>Es ist jetzt halb zehn.</p> <p>It is now half past nine. (half ten)</p>
<p>Es ist 11 Uhr.</p> <p>It's 11:00.</p>	<p>Das habe ich nicht gesagt!</p> <p>I didn't say that!</p>
<p>Du bist nicht mein Vater!</p> <p>You aren't my father!</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to state essential negative statements.

<i>German</i>	<i>English</i>
---------------	----------------

Phrase 1	<i>Ich habe kein Auto.</i>	I don't have a car.
Word 1	<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2	<i>habe</i>	to have
Word 3	<i>kein</i>	no
Word 4	<i>Auto</i>	car
Phrase 2	<i>Ich habe keine Zeit.</i>	I don't have time.
Word 1	<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2	<i>habe</i>	to have
Word 3	<i>keine</i>	no
Word 4	<i>Zeit</i>	time
Phrase 3	<i>Ich weiß es nicht.</i>	I don't know.
Word 1	<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2	<i>weiß</i>	know
Word 3	<i>es</i>	it
Word 4	<i>nicht</i>	not
Phrase 4	<i>Ich denke nicht.</i>	I don't think so.
Word 1	<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2	<i>denke</i>	think
Word 3	<i>nicht</i>	not

CULTURAL INSIGHT

If you want to answer negatively but don't want to be too direct, you can add the word *sehr*

after the *nicht*. It literally means "very," but we use it to mean the same thing as "really"

So if you want to say "I don't really like this car", it will be *Ich mag dieses Auto nicht sehr*.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #20 Talking About Your Likes

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

20

GERMAN

1. Magst du Käse?
2. Mögen Sie Süßigkeiten?
3. Ja, ich mag Käse.
4. Ja, ich liebe Käse.

ENGLISH

1. Do you like cheese? (informal)
2. Do you like sweets? (formal)
3. Yes, I like Cheese.
4. Yes, I like cheese a lot.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
Magst du	do you like (informal)	
Käse	cheese	noun; masculine, der
Mögen Sie	do you like (formal)	
Süßigkeiten	Süßigkeiten	noun; feminine; die
ja	yes	adverb
mag	to like	

Liebe

love, to love

noun; feminine, die

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Ich hätte gern ein Butterbrot mit Käse. I would like a cheese sandwich.	Schweizer Käse ist sehr berühmt. Swiss cheese is very famous.
Na schön, du hast ja Recht. Fair enough, you're right. (In the sense of "I'm giving in.")	Ja, das stimmt. Yes, that's right.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask and answer affirmatively to the question.

	Register	German	English
Phrase 1	informal	Magst du Käse?	Do you like cheese?
Word 1		<i>Magst du</i>	do you like (informal)
Word 2		<i>Käse</i>	cheese
Phrase 2	formal	Mögen Sie Süßigkeiten?	Do you like sweets?
Word 1		<i>Mögen Sie</i>	do you like (formal)
Word 2		<i>Süßigkeiten</i>	Süßigkeiten
Phrase 3		Ja, ich mag Käse.	Yes, I like Cheese.
Word 1		<i>Ja</i>	Yes

Word 2	<i>ich</i>	I
Word 3	<i>mag</i>	to like
Word 4	<i>Käse</i>	Cheese
Phrase 4	<i>Ja, ich liebe Käse.</i>	Yes, I like cheese a lot.
Word 1	<i>ja</i>	yes
Word 2	<i>ich</i>	I
Word 3	<i>liebe</i>	to love
Word 4	<i>Käse</i>	Cheese

CULTURAL INSIGHT

To express feelings of love towards your family, you would say *Ich hab' dich lieb* since *Ich liebe dich* is generally used between couples. *Ich hab' dich lieb* is not as strong as *Ich liebe dich*, and can be expressed without being explicitly romantic.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #21 Talking about Your Dislikes

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

21

GERMAN

1. Ich mag Fußball nicht.
2. Ich mag nicht warten.
3. Ich hasse das.
4. Ich hasse warten.

ENGLISH

1. I don't like soccer.
2. I don't like waiting.
3. I hate this.
4. I hate waiting.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
ich	I	personal pronoun; nominative	
mag	to like		
Fußball	soccer, soccer ball	noun; masculine, der	masculine
nicht	not	adverb	
warten	to wait	verb	
hassen	to hate	verb	

das

that

SAMPLE SENTENCES

Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun!

I was so busy last week!

Ich bin Lisa.

I am Lisa.

Wer hat wen beim Fußball besiegt?

Who beat whom at the Soccer match?

Ich schaue gerade Fußball. Mann, sind die heute mies.

I am watching Soccer right now. Man, they are lame today.

Das habe ich nicht gesagt!

I didn't say that!

Du bist nicht mein Vater!

You aren't my father!

Können Sie noch ein paar Tage länger auf Ihre Rechnung warten? Ich habe sie fast fertig.

Can you wait for your invoice a couple of days more? I have it almost ready.

Ich mag warten nicht.

I don't like waiting.

Ich hasse es stundenlang auf dich zu warten!

I hate waiting for you for hours!

Musstest du lange warten?

Did you have to wait a long time?

Ich mag kein Sushi, denn ich hasse Fisch.

I don't like sushi because I hate fish.

Ich hasse hellgrüne Hemden.

I hate light green shirts.

Das ist ein wirklich sehr süßes Baby.

That really is a very cute baby.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to say that you don't like something.

	German	English
Phrase 1	<i>Ich mag Fußball nicht.</i>	I don't like soccer.
Word 1	<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2	<i>mag</i>	to like
Word 3	<i>Fußball</i>	soccer, soccer ball
Word 4	<i>nicht</i>	not
Phrase 2	<i>Ich mag nicht warten.</i>	I don't like waiting.
Word 1	<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2	<i>mag</i>	to like
Word 3	<i>nicht</i>	not
Word 4	<i>warten</i>	to wait
Phrase 3	<i>Ich hasse das.</i>	I hate this.
Word 1	<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2	<i>hasse</i>	to hate
Word 3	<i>das</i>	that
Phrase 4	<i>Ich hasse warten.</i>	I hate waiting.
Word 1	<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2	<i>hasse</i>	to hate
Word 3	<i>warten</i>	to wait

CULTURAL INSIGHT

In German, there are a couple of verbs that change stem for all singular forms. This concerns mostly German modal verbs, which are the equivalents of can, may, must and the like, but also the verb *mögen* meaning "to like", which you have seen in this lesson. *mögen* uses the stem *mag-* for all singular forms - *ich mag*, *du magst*, and *er mag* - which is NOT *er magt*, as there's no -t! For plural it reverts back to *mögen* as a stem, so you get *wir mögen*, *ihr mögt*, and *sie mögen*.

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #22

Ordering at a Restaurant

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

22

GERMAN

1. Kann ich das Menü haben?
2. Was können Sie empfehlen?
3. Einen Kaffee bitte.
4. Ich möchte einen Kaffee haben.

ENGLISH

1. Can I see the menu?
2. What do you recommend?
3. A coffee please.
4. I would like a coffee.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
Kann	can		
das	that		
Menü	menu		
haben	to have	verb	
was	what	pronoun	
können	can, to be able to, to be allowed to	verb	

Sie	you (formal)	personal pronoun	
empfehlen	to recommend	verb	
Einen	a	personal pronoun, nominative	
Kaffee	coffee	noun	masculine
bitte	please	noun	
möchte	would like	verb	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Das ist ein wirklich sehr süßes Baby.</p> <p>That really is a very cute baby.</p>	<p>Sie haben zu viel Abfall in ihrem Garten.</p> <p>They have too much garbage in their garden.</p>
<p>Ich habe zwei Brüder und eine Schwester.</p> <p>I have two brothers and one sister.</p>	<p>Du hast eine große Klappe.</p> <p>You have a big mouth.</p>
<p>Haben Sie Zeit?</p> <p>Do you have time?</p>	<p>Was ist das Thema?</p> <p>What is the topic?</p>
<p>Was ist das?</p> <p>What is this?</p>	<p>Kannst du deutsches Essen essen?</p> <p>Can you eat German food?</p>
<p>Ich kann nicht gut singen.</p> <p>I can't sing well.</p>	<p>Haben Sie eine andere Kreditkarte?</p> <p>Do you have another credit card?</p>
<p>Sie sind Herr Smith.</p> <p>You are Mr. Smith.</p>	<p>Welches Gericht können Sie mir empfehlen?</p> <p>Which dish can you recommend to me?</p>

<p>Ich kann den Tag nicht ohne Kaffee beginnen.</p> <p>I can't start the day without coffee.</p>	<p>Viele Deutsche trinken mehrere Tassen Kaffee pro Tag.</p> <p>Many Germans have several cups of coffee per day.</p>
<p>Ich trinke immer Kaffee, wenn ich arbeite.</p> <p>I always drink coffee when I work.</p>	<p>Bitte sprechen Sie Englisch.</p> <p>Please speak English.</p>

Ich möchte einen Kaffee.

I would like a coffee.

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to order at a restaurant or coffee shop.

Register	German	English
Phrase 1	<i>Kann ich das Menü haben?</i>	Can I see the menu?
Word 1	<i>Kann</i>	can
Word 2	<i>ich</i>	I
Word 3	<i>das</i>	that
Word 4	<i>Menü</i>	menu
Word 5	<i>haben</i>	to have
Phrase 2	<i>Was können Sie empfehlen?</i>	What do you recommend?
Word 1	<i>Was</i>	what
Word 2	<i>können</i>	can

Word 3	<i>Sie</i>	you (formal)
Word 4	<i>empfehlen</i>	to recommend
Phrase 3	<i>Einen Kaffee bitte.</i>	A coffee please.
Word 1	<i>Einen</i>	a
Word 2	<i>Kaffee</i>	coffee
Word 3	<i>bitte</i>	please
Phrase 4	<i>Ich möchte einen Kaffee haben.</i>	I would like a coffee.
Word 1	<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2	<i>möchte</i>	would like
Word 3	<i>einen</i>	a
Word 4	<i>Kaffee</i>	coffee

CULTURAL INSIGHT

There are many different ways to order at a restaurant or coffee shop, but one of the most commonly used phrases would be *Ich möchte gerne einen Kaffee* which literally means "I would like to have a coffee". The word *Kaffee* is of course replaceable. Also, you can add items by using *und* to mean "and" like in *Ich möchte gerne einen Kaffee und ein Stück Apfelkuchen* which means "I would like to have a coffee and a piece of apple pie".

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #23

How to Ask for the Bill

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

23

GERMAN

1. Können Sie bitte die Rechnung bringen?
2. Wo kann ich die Rechnung bezahlen?
3. Entschuldigung, das Wechselgeld stimmt nicht.
4. Behalten Sie den Rest.

ENGLISH

1. Can you bring the bill, please?
2. Where can I pay the bill?
3. Excuse me, the change is wrong.
4. Keep the change.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
Rest	remainder	noun; masculine, der
Können sie bitte	could you please	expression; literally "could you please?"
die	the	
Rechnung	bill	noun
bringen	to bring	verb
wo	where	adverb

Kann	can	
ich	I	personal pronoun; nominative
die Rechnung	the bill	noun
bezahlen	to pay	verb
Entschuldigung!	Excuse me.	expression
das	the	
Wechselgeld	change	noun; neuter, das
stimmt	is true	
nicht	not	adverb
behalten	to keep	verb
Sie	you (formal)	personal pronoun
den	the	article

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Bitte bringen Sie mir die Rechnung. Bring me the check, please.</p>	<p>Bitte bring den gelben Sack mit Müll raus. Please take out the yellow sack of garbage.</p>
<p>Wo wirst du morgen Abend hingehen? Where are you going tomorrow night?</p>	<p>Entschuldigen Sie bitte, wo finde ich das Deutsche Museum? Excuse me please, where can I find the German Museum?</p>
<p>Wo wohnst du jetzt? Where do you live now?</p>	<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun! I was so busy last week!</p>

<p>Ich bin Lisa. I am Lisa.</p>	<p>Er hat es schließlich geschafft alle seine Rechnungen zu bezahlen. He finally managed to pay all his bills.</p>
<p>Er musste Strafe bezahlen, weil er im Halteverbot geparkt hatte. He had to pay a fee, because he had parked his car in a clearway.</p>	<p>Ich würde gerne bezahlen. I would like to pay. / The bill, please.</p>
<p>Entschuldigung, ich glaube sie sitzen auf meinem Platz. Excuse me, I think this is my seat you are sitting on.</p>	<p>Das habe ich nicht gesagt! I didn't say that!</p>
<p>Du bist nicht mein Vater! You aren't my father!</p>	<p>Das Wechselgeld können Sie behalten. You can keep the change.</p>
<p>Haben Sie eine andere Kreditkarte? Do you have another credit card?</p>	<p>Sie sind Herr Smith. You are Mr. Smith.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to ask for the bill and check the change.

	<i>German</i>	English
Phrase 1	<i>Können Sie bitte die Rechnung bringen?</i>	Can you bring the bill, please?
Word 1	<i>Können sie bitte</i>	could you please
Word 2	<i>die</i>	the
Word 3	<i>Rechnung</i>	bill

Word 4	<i>bringen</i>	to bring
Phrase 2	<i>Wo kann ich die Rechnung bezahlen?</i>	Where can I pay the bill?
Word 1	<i>Wo</i>	where
Word 2	<i>kann</i>	can
Word 3	<i>ich</i>	I
Word 4	<i>die Rechnung</i>	the bill
Word 5	<i>bezahlen</i>	to pay
Phrase 3	<i>Entschuldigung, das Wechselgeld stimmt nicht.</i>	Excuse me, the change is wrong.
Word 1	<i>Entschuldigung</i>	Excuse me
Word 2	<i>das</i>	the
Word 3	<i>Wechselgeld</i>	change
Word 4	<i>stimmt</i>	is true
Word 5	<i>nicht</i>	not
Phrase 4	<i>Behalten Sie den Rest.</i>	Keep the change.
Word 1	<i>Behalten</i>	keep
Word 2	<i>Sie</i>	you (formal)
Word 3	<i>den</i>	the
Word 4	<i>Rest</i>	remainder

CULTURAL INSIGHT

To ask politely for the bill in German, you just say *Ich möchte bitte zahlen* which is "I would like to pay". An even shorter way would be *Zahlen, bitte!* which can sometimes sound a bit rude. Both expressions are commonly used and it can happen that on some occasions you will be asked to check the change with *Stimmt das Wechselgeld?* which is "Is the change ok?" or *Bitte zählen Sie nochmal nach* which is "Please check again".

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #24

Invitations

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

24

GERMAN

1. Kommst du mit uns?
2. Ja, ich komme mit euch!
3. Kommt ihr zu meiner Party?
4. Ja, ich komme mit Begleitung.

ENGLISH

1. Are you coming with us? (informal)
2. Yes I'm coming with you guys! (informal)
3. Are you coming to my party? (formal)
4. Yes, I am coming with some friends.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class	Gender
Kommst	to come	verb	
du	you (informal)	personal pronoun, nominative	
mit	with	preposition	
uns	us	pronoun	
ja	yes	adverb	

ich	I	personal pronoun; nominative	
kommen	to come	verb	
euch	you (plural, as an object); yourselves	personal pronoun	
Kommt ihr	will you come		
zu	to	preposition	
meiner	my	personal pronoun	
Party	party	noun	feminine
Begleitung	company, some company	noun	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Du bist gut.</p> <p>You are good.</p>	<p>Bist du dir sicher?</p> <p>Are you sure?</p>
<p>Ich muss mit dem Hund rausgehen.</p> <p>I have to go out with the dog. / I have to walk the dog.</p>	<p>Er spielt mit dem Hund.</p> <p>He plays with the dog.</p>
<p>Lass uns heute ausruhen.</p> <p>Let's relax today.</p>	<p>Na schön, du hast ja Recht.</p> <p>Fair enough, you're right. (In the sense of "I'm giving in.")</p>
<p>Ja, das stimmt.</p> <p>Yes, that's right.</p>	<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun!</p> <p>I was so busy last week!</p>

<p>Ich bin Lisa. I am Lisa.</p>	<p>Ich weiß, dass du nicht willst, dass ich zur Feier komme. I know you don't want me to come to the party.</p>
<p>Ich würde gerne morgen wiederkommen, wenn möglich. I would like to come again tomorrow, if possible.</p>	<p>Lisa kommt heute nicht. Lisa isn't coming today.</p>
<p>Ich mag euch beide. I like both of you.</p>	<p>Ich komme mit zum Strand, aber ich werde mich nur sonnen, nicht schwimmen. I'm coming along to the beach, but I will just sun-bathe, I won't swim.</p>
<p>Bitte gib mir etwas zu trinken! Please give me something to drink!</p>	<p>Alle kommen zur Party, du auch? Everybody is coming to the party, you too?</p>
<p>Die Party war ein Reinfl. The party was a failure.</p>	

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to invite someone out.

	Register	German	English
Phrase 1	informal	<i>Kommst du mit uns?</i>	Are you coming with us?
Word 1		<i>Kommst</i>	to come
Word 2		<i>du</i>	you (informal)
Word 3		<i>mit</i>	with

Word 4		<i>uns</i>	us
Phrase 2	informal	<i>Ja, ich komme mit euch!</i>	Yes I'm coming with you guys!
Word 1		<i>Ja</i>	yes
Word 2		<i>ich</i>	I
Word 3		<i>komme</i>	to come
Word 4		<i>mit</i>	with
Word 5		<i>euch</i>	you (plural)
Phrase 3	formal	<i>Kommt ihr zu meiner Party?</i>	Are you coming to my party?
Word 1		<i>Kommt ihr</i>	will you come
Word 2		<i>zu</i>	to
Word 3		<i>meiner</i>	my
Word 4		<i>party</i>	party
Phrase 4		<i>Ja, ich komme mit Begleitung.</i>	Yes, I am coming with some friends.
Word 1		<i>Ja</i>	Yes
Word 2		<i>ich</i>	I
Word 3		<i>komme</i>	to come
Word 4		<i>mit</i>	with

CULTURAL INSIGHT

When using the verb *kommen* together with other verbs like "come and see" you always use the infinitive form *kommen*. For example, *kommen und gehen* - "come and go", or *kommen und sehen* - "come and see". When you combine verbs in this way, they actually function like a noun!

LESSON NOTES

3-Minute German S1 #25

On the Phone

CONTENTS

- 2 German
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

25

GERMAN

1. Hallo. (answering the phone)
2. Hier spricht Albert.
3. Kann ich bitte mit Albert sprechen?
4. Ich werde später wieder anrufen.

ENGLISH

1. Hello. (answering the phone)
2. This is Albert.
3. May I talk to Albert?
4. I'll call again later.

VOCABULARY

German	English	Class
hallo	hello, hello (on the phone)	interjection, greeting
hier	here	adverb
spricht	speaks	
Kann	can	
ich	I	personal pronoun; nominative
bitte	please	noun

mit	with	preposition
sprechen	to speak	verb
werde	will	
später	later	adverb
wieder	again	adverb
anrufen	to call	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>Hallo, kann ich mit Anna sprechen? Hello, can I speak to Anna?</p>	<p>Hallo! Wie geht es Dir? Hello! How are you?</p>
<p>Sie sind hier. You are here./They are here.</p>	<p>Ich hatte letzte Woche so viel zu tun! I was so busy last week!</p>
<p>Ich bin Lisa. I am Lisa.</p>	<p>Bitte sprechen Sie Englisch. Please speak English.</p>
<p>Ich muss mit dem Hund rausgehen. I have to go out with the dog. / I have to walk the dog.</p>	<p>Er spielt mit dem Hund. He plays with the dog.</p>
<p>Entschuldigung, ich spreche kein Deutsch. Sorry, I don't speak German.</p>	<p>Ich spreche Deutsch. I speak German.</p>
<p>Es wird später Regen geben. There will be rain later.</p>	<p>Musst du wieder Gitarre spielen? Do you have to play the guitar again?</p>

<p>Halte die Packetverfolgungsnummer bereit, wenn du die Post anrufst.</p> <p>Have the parcel tracking number ready, when you are calling the post office.</p>	<p>Wie teuer ist es, von Italian nach Spanien anzurufen?</p> <p>How expensive is it to call from Italy to Spain?</p>
<p>Ich werde dich später anrufen, nachdem ich mit meinen Hausaufgaben fertig bin.</p> <p>I will call you later, after I'm done with my homework.</p>	<p>Ich habe schon oft dort angerufen. Am Ende läuft es immer darauf hinaus, dass wir noch länger auf unsere Bestellung warten müssen.</p> <p>I already called there often. In the end it always comes down to us waiting even longer for our order.</p>

GRAMMAR

In this lesson you will learn how to understand the basic vocabulary on the phone.

	<i>German</i>	English
Phrase 1	<i>Hallo. (antwortend)</i>	Hello. (answering)
Word 1	<i>Hallo</i>	hello
Phrase 2	<i>Hier spricht Albert</i>	This is Albert.
Word 1	<i>Hier</i>	here
Word 2	<i>spricht</i>	speaks
Word 3	<i>Albert</i>	Albert, person's name
Phrase 3	<i>Kann ich bitte mit Albert sprechen?</i>	May I talk to Albert?
Word 1	<i>Kann</i>	can
Word 2	<i>ich</i>	I

Word 3	<i>bitte</i>	please
Word 4	<i>mit</i>	with
Word 5	Albert	Albert, person's name
Word 6	<i>sprechen</i>	to speak
Phrase 4	<i>Ich werde später wieder anrufen.</i>	I'll call again later.
Word 1	<i>Ich</i>	I
Word 2	<i>werde</i>	will
Word 3	<i>später</i>	later
Word 4	<i>wieder</i>	again

CULTURAL INSIGHT

On the phone, we greet people with *Hallo* meaning "hello" or *Guten Tag* meaning "good day". When finishing the phone call, we say good-bye by using *Auf Wiederhören* which literally means "hear you again".